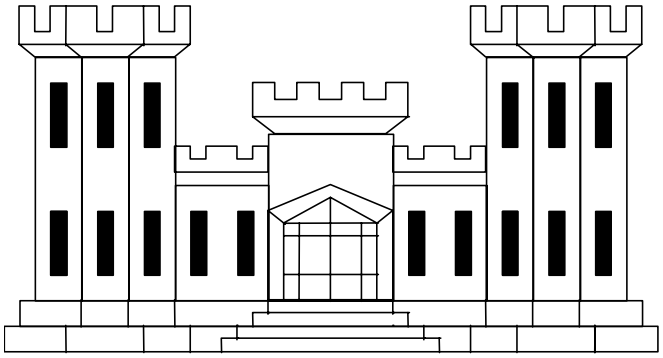
Headquarters, Department of the Army ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP



MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE

ENGINEER PLATOON, ENGINEER COMPANY LIGHT ARMORED CAVALRY REGIMENT

*ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 5-053-12-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 20 June 2001

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

*

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the active component (AC) and the reserve component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that the Engineer (EN) Platoon (PLT), EN Company (CO), Light (LT) Armored Cavalry Regiment (ACR), are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to the EN PLT, EN CO, LT ACR table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05053L000.

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ), US Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Submit comments for improving this publication on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 and forward it to Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-8600.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the--

- Unit's mission-essential tasks list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit's training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-053-35-MTP for the EN CO, LT ACR. This ARTEP MTP describes the relationship of the CO's training program to the PLT's training program.

b. ARTEP 5-035-11-MTP, Assault and Obstacle PLT, EN CO, LT ACR. This ARTEP MTP indicates the relationship of the PLT's training program to the CO's training program.

c. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

d. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels.

e. Military qualification standards (MQS) II manuals for company-grade officers.

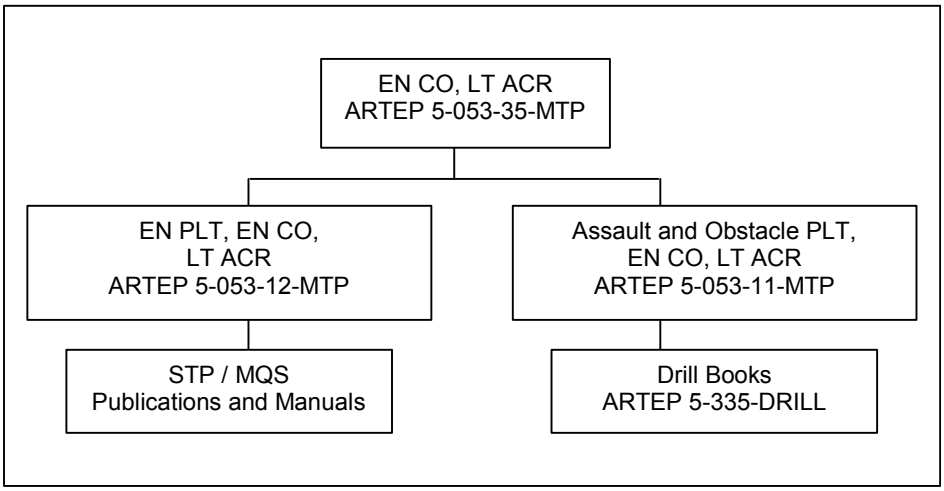


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the missions and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a situational-training exercise (STX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, it can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs), provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Combined-Arms Training Strategies (CATS), contains an explanation of the link between CATS and the Standard Army Training System (SATS) and how CATS can assist training managers with training in a combined-arms environment.

h. Appendix B, Exercise Operation Order (OPORD), contains a sample OPORD.

i. Appendix C, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threats as well as special situations that impact operations.

j. Appendix D, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own mission. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

(1) Mobility.

(2) Countermobility.

(3) Survivability.

(4) Fight as an engineer.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop a field-training exercise (FTX) for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 25-100.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. The CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. The CATS will be embedded in the SATS version 4.1 and higher.

a. The unit training strategies central to the CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit's training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the BN to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit's training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit's training strategy are:

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FM publications.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit's training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL. The CATS is discussed in Appendix A of this MTP.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. The commander--

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and the next higher HQ guidance. Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STX and FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, command guidance. If they do not support the guidance, or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit's training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Chain of command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain-of-command responsibilities include--

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.

(b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk-management concepts.

(2) Staff.

(a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk-reduction options for training.

(b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assess safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluate safety performance during after-action reviews (AARs).

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk-management concepts and methods to the operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond your control or authority to your superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts; correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

` (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Steps. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5:

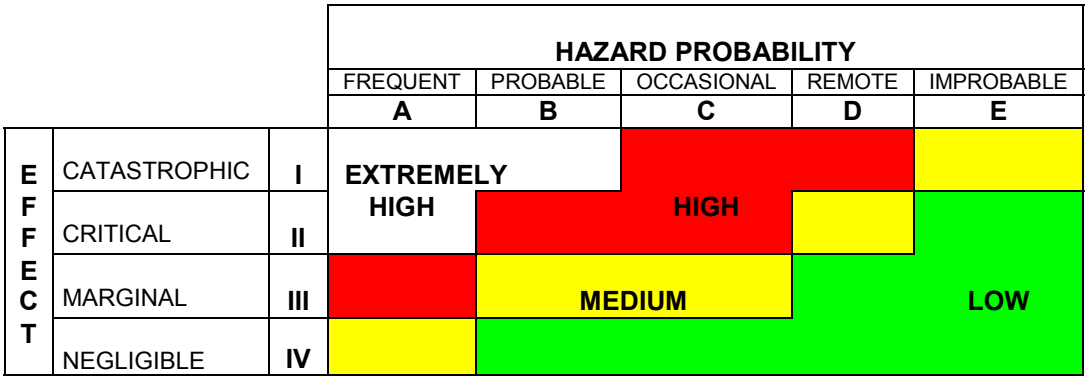
(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk-assessment matrix (Figure 1-2) is a tool to be used for assessing hazards.

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include follow-up and AAR. Develop lessons learned.



Effect

Catastrophic	Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage.
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment.

Probability

Frequent	Individual soldier/item. All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life. Continuously experienced.
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life. Occurs frequently.
Occasional	Individual soldier/item. All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life. Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life.
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life. Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life. Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely.

Risk Levels

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission.
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

Figure 1-2. Army Standard Risk-Assessment Matrix

e. Fratricide. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

f. Causes of fratricide. The following paragraphs identify the primary causes of fratricide:

(1) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive-fire control plans.

(2) Land-navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat-identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(2) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Oversupervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk-assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment

resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk-assessment matrix.

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief the chain of command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training-performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

Environmental Area:					Rating:	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicle/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Environmental Risk-Assessment Work Sheet						

Unit Operation Environmental Issues	Movement of Heavy Vehicle/ Systems	Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/ Systems	AA Activities	Field Maintenance of Equipment	Garrison Maintenance of Equipment	Risk Rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						
Overall Environmental Risk-Assessment Form						

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander
Risk Categories			

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk-Assessment Matrix

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in paragraph 3 of the preface, or use the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table Mission Title
Countermobility
Fight as Engineers
Fight as Infantry
Mobility
Sustainment Engineering
Unit Survivability

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating systems (BOS), which are indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
Develop Intelligence				
05-3-0401.05-R01A Support a Route Classification	X	X		X
05-3-0404 Conduct a River-Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X	X	X	X
05-3-0407 Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	X		X
05-3-0411.05-R01A Conduct an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance	X	X	X	X
05-3-0412 Conduct a Technical Reconnaissance	X	X	X	X
05-3-0413 Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance	X	X	X	X
05-3-0414 Support Reconnaissance Operations	X	X		X
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
05-1-1200 Fight as Engineers	X	X	X	X
05-2-0908.05-R01A Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	X	X	X	X
05-3-0004 Breach Obstacles		X		X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-0201 Create a Crater Obstacle with Explosives	X	X	X	X
05-3-0202 Disable a Bridge with Explosives	X	X	X	X
05-3-0305 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X	X	X	X
05-3-0705 Construct Combat Road/Trails	X	X	X	X
05-3-1222 Disengage (Dismounted)	X	X	X	X
05-3-1225 React to an Ambush	X	X	X	X
05-3-1226 Establish a Hasty Position	X	X	X	X
05-3-1232 Secure at a Halt	X	X	X	X
05-3-1233 Cross a Danger Area (Dismounted)	X	X	X	X
05-3-1237 Move Through Urbanized Terrain	X	X	X	X
05-3-1238 Clear a Building	X	X	X	X
05-3-7122 React to Contact	X	X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A Perform Passage of Lines	X	X	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X	X	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A Establish Unit Defense	X	X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A Defend a Battle Position	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	X	X	X	X
Protect the Force				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X	X	X
05-3-0001 Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Platoon)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0043.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques				X
05-3-0044 Support the Attack on Fortified Positions		X		X
05-3-0047.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques	X	X	X	X
05-3-0111 Emplace a Volcano Minefield	X			
05-3-0112.05-R01A Emplace a Standard-Pattern Minefield	X			
05-3-0113 Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines	X	X	X	X
05-3-0114 Support Breaching Operations	X	X		X
05-3-0115.05-R01A Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-3-0116 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-3-0119.05-R01A Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-3-0204 Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles	X	X	X	X
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X	X	X
05-3-0303.05-R01A Construct Wire Obstacles	X			

Collective Tasks		COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X	X	X	X
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle	X	X	X	X
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X	X	X	X
05-3-0603	Prepare Expedient Fords	X	X		X
05-4-0102	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-4-0105	Improve a Vehicle Lane Through a Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-4-0110	Mark a Minefield	X	X	X	X
05-4-0205	Create an Abatis	X	X		X
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
05-3-0619	Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge	X	X		X
05-3-0701	Construct an Expedient Landing Zone for Helicopters	X	X	X	X
05-3-0707	Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges	X	X		X
05-3-0785	Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces	X	X		X
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistical Package (LOGPAC)	X	X	X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X	X	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X	X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	COUNTERMOBILITY	FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	FIGHT AS INFANTRY	MOBILITY
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X	X	X
Exercise Command and Control				
05-2-1218 Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-3-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)	X	X	X	X
05-3-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon [PLT])	X	X	X	X
05-3-0025 Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)	X			X
05-3-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Company	X	X		X
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process	X	X	X	X
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	X	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
Develop Intelligence		
05-3-0401.05-R01A Support a Route Classification	X	
05-3-0404 Conduct a River-Crossing Site Reconnaissance	X	
05-3-0407 Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	
05-3-0411.05-R01A Conduct an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance	X	
05-3-0412 Conduct a Technical Reconnaissance	X	
05-3-0413 Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance		
05-3-0414 Support Reconnaissance Operations	X	
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver		
05-1-1200 Fight as Engineers		X
05-2-0908.05-R01A Conduct Quartering-Party Operations	X	X
05-3-0004 Breach Obstacles	X	
05-3-0201 Create a Crater Obstacle with Explosives		
05-3-0202 Disable a Bridge with Explosives		
05-3-0305 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions		X
05-3-0705 Construct Combat Road/Trails	X	
05-3-1222 Disengage (Dismounted)	X	X
05-3-1225 React to an Ambush	X	X
05-3-1226 Establish a Hasty Position	X	X
05-3-1232 Secure at a Halt	X	X
05-3-1233 Cross a Danger Area (Dismounted)		
05-3-1237 Move Through Urbanized Terrain	X	
05-3-1238 Clear a Building		
05-3-7122 React to Contact	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire	X	X
07-2-0333.05-T01A Perform Passage of Lines	X	X

Collective Tasks	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy	X	X
07-3-0219.05-T01A Establish Unit Defense	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X
07-3-4129.05-T01A Defend a Battle Position	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically	X	X
Protect the Force		
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X
03-2-C312.05-T01A Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X
05-2-0301 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X
05-2-0911 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X
05-3-0001 Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Platoon)		

Collective Tasks	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
05-3-0043.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques		
05-3-0044 Support the Attack on Fortified Positions		
05-3-0047.05-R01A Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques		
05-3-0111 Emplace a Volcano Minefield		
05-3-0112.05-R01A Emplace a Standard-Pattern Minefield		
05-3-0113 Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines	X	X
05-3-0114 Support Breaching Operations	X	
05-3-0115.05-R01A Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X
05-3-0116 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X
05-3-0119.05-R01A Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield		
05-3-0204 Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles		
05-3-0210 Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X	X
05-3-0303.05-R01A Construct Wire Obstacles	X	X
05-3-0304 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions		X
05-3-0307 Construct a Log Obstacle	X	
05-3-0312 Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X	X
05-3-0603 Prepare Expedient Fords	X	
05-4-0102 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X
05-4-0105 Improve a Vehicle Lane Through a Minefield	X	
05-4-0110 Mark a Minefield	X	
05-4-0205 Create an Abatis		
05-5-0302 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air-Defense Measures	X	X

Collective Tasks	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk-Management Procedures	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment		
05-3-0619 Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge		
05-3-0701 Construct an Expedient Landing Zone for Helicopters	X	
05-3-0707 Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges		
05-3-0785 Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces	X	
05-3-1600 Receive a Logistical Package (LOGPAC)	X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)	X	X
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply	X	X
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System	X	X
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X
Exercise Command and Control		
05-2-1218 Conduct Report Procedures	X	X
05-3-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon)	X	X
05-3-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon [PLT])	X	X
05-3-0025 Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)		
05-3-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Company	X	
05-3-1018.05-R01A Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	X	X

Collective Tasks	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X
12-1-0408.05-T01A Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process	X	X
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability	X	X
12-3-0001.05-T01A Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines / Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit's mission, sample FTXs and STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit's ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

Table 3-1. Countermobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-0303.05-R01A	Construct Wire Obstacles
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

Table 3-2. Fight as Engineers Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS ENGINEERS	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations
05-1-1200	Fight as Engineers
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position

Table 3-3. Mobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically-Contaminated Area
05-3-0114	Support Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct River-Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0609	Operate River-Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare Expedient Fords
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles with Engineer Equipment

Table 3-4. Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare For a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare For a Friendly Nuclear Strike
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare For a Nuclear Attack
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

Table 3-5. Fight as Infantry Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON FIGHT AS INFANTRY	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare For a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare For a Friendly Nuclear Strike
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare For a Nuclear Attack
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-2-0333.05-T01A	Perform Passage of Lines
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample STX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the STX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. STX Exercise

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
STX 5-2-E0001	Breaching Obstacles	4-1

4-2. STX. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX--

a. Provides repetitive training of missions.

b. Allows the training to focus on identified weaknesses.

c. Allows the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.

d. Saves time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

ENGINEER PLATOON
STX
5-2-E0001
BREACHING OBSTACLES

1. Objective. This sample STX trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's operation (Breaching Obstacles).

2. Interface. This STX supports the company FTX 5-2-E0001 requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training.

a. Individual training. This training should be based on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. Use the individual-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 12B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards then providing feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes common task tests and the commander's evaluations.

b. Collective training. This training should be based on the collective tasks required for the STX. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission (as well as other missions) are in the mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2.

c. Leader training. This training should be based on the leader tasks required for the exercises as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When material and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed below.

(1) Classroom discussions on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).

(2) A map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(3) Terrain board or sand table exercises permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war gaming or rehearsals. (Model the terrain board or the sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(4) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land-navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer (NCO) development program.

(6) Training extension courses use audiovisual equipment to present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard.

d. Training tips and instructions. The following are training tips and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX:

(1) Know the requirements for breaching obstacles, marking obstacles, and tactical movement.

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EO that supports this exercise.

(4) Conduct this STX using one of the following options:

(a) With ammunition, without ammunition, or using live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) With or without the Multiple Integrated Laser-Equipment System (MILES). The MILES provides better feedback and should be used if it is available.

(c) Under all environmental conditions, both day and night and with or without nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC). These scenarios should involve an active NBC environment.

(5) Ensure that this STX is initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (expect for planned AARs). During the "run" phase, the STX is executed under conditions as close as possible to those expected in combat (including full operational security [OPSEC] and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, an aggressive opposing forces [OPFOR], NBC environment, and movement distance). This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training and drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(6) Ensure that the T&EO standards for this exercise (from Chapter 5) are met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(7) Conduct this exercise on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(8) Ensure that the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to portray threat activities realistically.

(9) Assign at least one evaluator to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR are in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary.

(10) Ensure that OPFOR units look and fight like a potential enemy. This will help soldiers understand threat tactics, doctrine, and weapons systems.

e. Training enhancers. This STX requires the platoon to breach an obstacle, move tactically, support by fire, and mark an obstacle.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in this STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices (NVDs).

(2) This STX can be conducted under increasing mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) levels as proficiency increase.

4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy obstacle has been established. Initial reports indicate that the obstacle is overwatched by a company-sized element. His defensive positions are not well established. He has the capability for indirect fire and close air support (CAS). The enemy has used chemical weapons and will probably do so again. A breach of the obstacle has been ordered to allow maneuver forces to move through to attack the enemy. Figure 4-1 illustrates the graphic scenario of task performance in this exercise.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a company fragmentary order (FRAGO) by the platoon and ends after the obstacle is marked. An after-action review (AAR) should be held after the obstacle has been breached and marked. A final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Table 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of T&EOs and a recommended time for each portion of the STX.

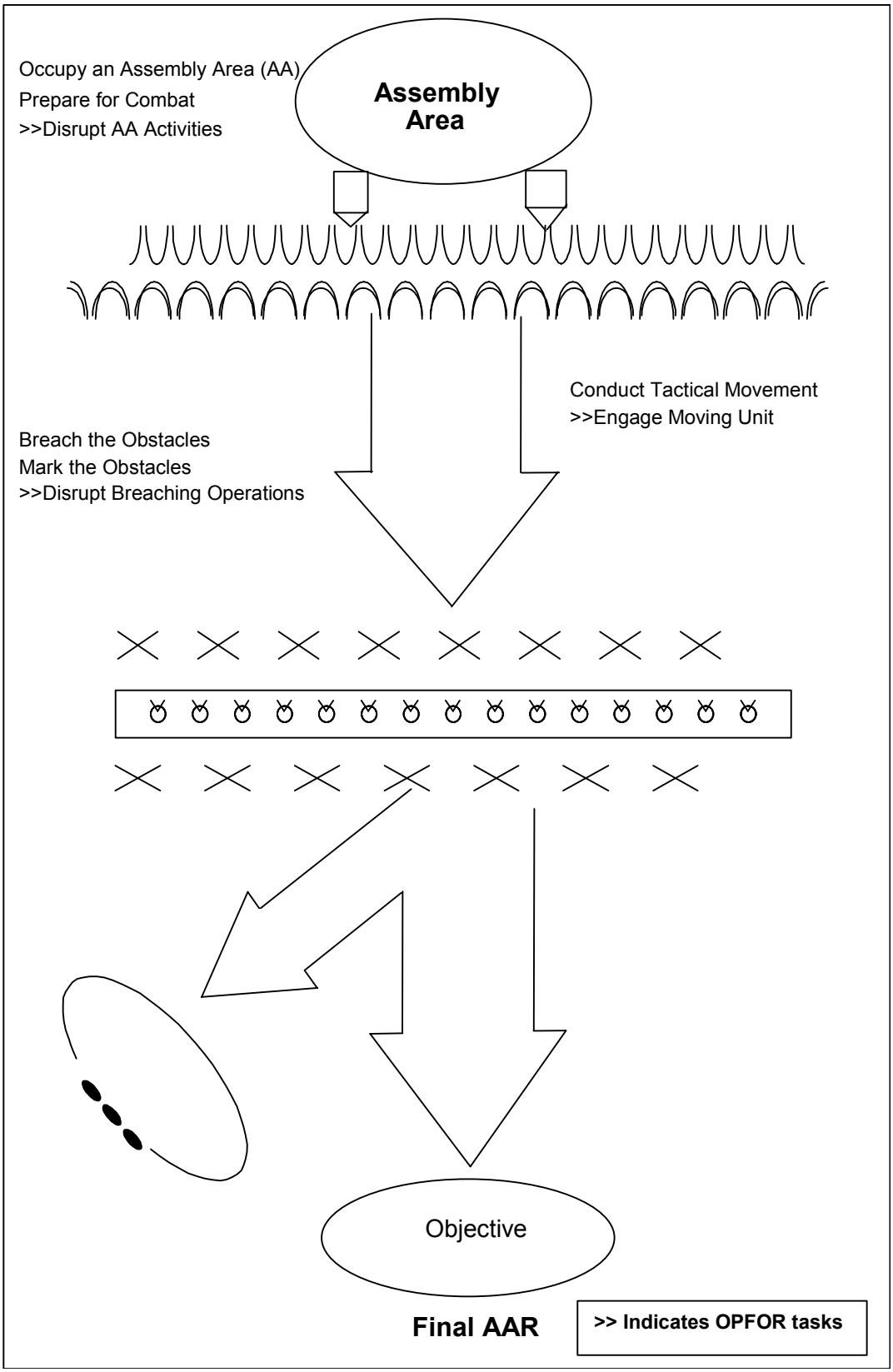


Figure 4-1. General Scenario STX

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
	Module 1	
1	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	4 hours
2	Receive a FRAGO	15 minutes
3	Prepare for Combat	3 hours
4	Issue a FRAGO	2 hours
5	Conduct Tactical Movement	2 hours
6	Breach the Obstacle	15 minutes
7	Mark the Obstacle	15 minutes
8	Conduct a Final AAR	1 hour
	Total time:	**12.45 hours**
NOTES: **1. These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.** **2. Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors and the unit's training proficiency.** **3. Additional time may be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.**		

5. Special Situation**.**

a. Your platoon is part of a company in a secure AA. The platoon receives a FRAGO to breach obstacles (Figure 4-2).

b. The company commander has ordered your platoon to lift your supporting fires. A sister platoon is prepared to provide support for the breach and marking of the obstacle. The company commander orders your platoon to breach the obstacle.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Trainers and observers/controllers (Os/Cs). This exercise can be conducted by the company commander or the platoon leader who will be the trainer and primary evaluator. At least one other O/C is required with the OPFOR. Another platoon being trained or evaluated should be used as the platoon supporting the breach operations. This platoon will need an additional trainer or O/C.

b. Vehicles and communications. Those vehicles and communications organic to the platoon are needed for this exercise. Two or three vehicles or trailers should be in the OPFOR supply site.

c. OPFOR. The OPFOR ground force should at least be a reinforced squad.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy forces are at 60 to 70 percent strength. They are preparing to counterattack and are expected to use air-delivered or artillery-delivered nonpersistent nerve agent.

b. Friendly Force. (Element designation) attack (date/time group) to destroy the enemy force at Objective _____ to disrupt the enemy's counterattack.

2. MISSION. (Element destination) is to provide breach support for (supported elements designation) to breach obstacles along the main avenue of approach.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operations. (See overlay.)

(1) Intent. Breach obstacles and destroy the enemy preparing to counterattack.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire to (another) platoon.

b. (Another) Platoon.

(1) Provide breach support for (evaluated) platoon.

(2) Prepare to replace (evaluated) platoon in case they become combat ineffective.

c. (Evaluated) Platoon.

(1) Provide local support by fire (initially).

(2) Breach obstacles.

(3) Mark obstacles according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Company rally point (RP) is (grid).

(2) Company linkup point is (grid).

Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for STX 5-2-E0001

d. Maneuver area. A 15- by 4-kilometer training area is desired. This area should provide for infiltration, cross-country movement, locations for supply sites, and a complex obstacle. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a "geographical" or "school" solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select and conceal positions.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the items listed in Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001

Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad
Demolitions (see note)		
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon
MDI igniters		60 each platoon
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon
Other Items		
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each
CLASS IV		
Concertina wire		
Mines		

MILES Equipment	Company	Evaluators	OPFOR
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	

NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the STX.

f. Regulations and requirements. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the STX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating STX 5-2-E0001

Task	Number
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-3-1018.05-R01A
Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	03-2-3008.05-T01A
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	03-3-C208.05-T01A
Support Breaching Operations	05-3-0114
Reorganize as Infantry	05-2-1200
Fight as Infantry	05-2-1215

8. Operation Order (OPORD). Figure 4-3 shows a sample OPORD using the outline provided in Chapter 4.

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. He has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM) indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 5th Division attacks to secure Objective Richmond, then assists passage of the exploitation force (24th Division). This operation will rapidly penetrate the main defensive belt to draw the 10th Independent Tank Regiment (ITR) south and fix it in a zone. This operation includes--

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires. 4th Battalion is in direct support.

2. MISSION. 25th Brigade conducts a passage of lines and attacks to secure Objective Richmond. On order, the 25th Brigade continues movement forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation. See the overlay developed by the trainer.

(1) Maneuver. 25th Brigade departs AA NK 243567 and conducts a passage of lines through the elements of 3rd Division. It conducts a penetration with two task forces (TFs), with one TF following as the brigade's reserve. TF A will be the main effort and attack along Axis Oak. TF B attacks along Axis Pine and is the supporting attack. On order, TF C (trailing along Axis Oak) becomes the main effort and continues the attack to Objective Richmond. The intent is to gain contact with the enemy, locate, and fix his main body so that the division can conduct envelopments to destroy him. It is necessary to destroy his combat outposts. We must quickly reorganize and continue movement until we find the main body. The TF that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If they cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver by the remainder of the brigade. Movement will continue to PL Green if no contact is gained, and past PL Green, on order.

Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD

(2) Fire Support. The priority of fires is to TF A initially and to the TF in contact once contact is made.

(3) Mines, Obstacles, and Fortifications. Identify critical checkpoints and obstacles shown on obstacles overlay.

b. Subunit missions, as required.

c. Engineer Support. The priority of support is to the two lead TFs. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the TF in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report the crossing of phase lines

(4) Report additional information as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the division's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI).

(2) Maintain radio-listening silence until initial contact with enemy.

Figure 4-3. Sample OPORD (continued)

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs)

5-1. General. This chapter contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in table 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element that performs the task.

b. Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

d. Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The ”M“ identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

e. Commander or Leader Assessment. The unit's leadership uses this to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the organization’s overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Task Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task Standards.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit’s training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual task and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO Column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit's demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, tasks number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

l. OPFOR Tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Develop Intelligence

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Support a Route Classification (05-3-0401.05-R01A)
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to support a route reconnaissance over a specified route. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles, obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate within 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance. a. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. (1) Included the routing to reconnoiter. (2) Included the method of reconnaissance as hasty or deliberate. (3) Included the reconnaissance objectives; for example, the obstacle location, the trafficability, and the water points. (4) Included the radio communications for the progress report, the assistance, and the communications check. (5) Included the actions that the security team and the element members took upon enemy contact. (6) Included the time and distance factors. (7) Included the noise and light discipline. b. Planned for a double flow of tracked vehicles (unless otherwise directed by the commander). c. Conducted troop-leading procedures. d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance. (1) Ensured that the required Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R were available.		
* 2. The element leader prepared an overlay of the specified route. a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols as one each at the start and end points. b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow. c. Prepared the title block with the following information: (1) The route-classification formula. (2) The name, the rank, and the social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification. (3) The unit conducting the classification.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) The date-time group (DTG). (5) The map name, edition, and scale. (6) Any of the remarks that were necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay. NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-170 for more detailed information 3. The element reconnoitered the specific route by measuring and recording information along the route. a. Determined the travel-way width for trafficability. NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6 to 8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic. b. Determined the route type (x, y, or z). NOTE: X = all-weather route, Y = limited all-weather route, Z = fair-weather route. c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load class of any section of the route. d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC. e. Recorded on the overlay the terrain features along the route; for example, the fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constriction, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearance. f. Identified, for detailed explanation on DA Form 1711-R, any of critical points spotted on the route; for example, terrain feature or obstacle. See FM 5-170. g. Recorded all measurements in meters on DA Form 1711-R. * 4. The element leader reviewed the overlay and filled out the required form upon completing the reconnaissance. a. Completed the overlay with all appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location. b. Ensured that the route-classification formula was present and located over the title block. c. Filled out the form(s) as required by the commander. d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters. * 5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or task force (TF) engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP) determines the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader-- a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms. b. Provided the required overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-196-3031	PREPARE A TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER
052-196-4016	DETERMINE THE MILITARY LOAD CLASSIFICATION (MLC) OF A MASONRY ARCH BRIDGE	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Conduct a Route Classification	ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct a River-Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-3-0404)
(FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-170)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a river reconnaissance. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their systems and they are operational. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that have a specific requirement and can support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Digital units can report through digital means to update overlay providing a current common operational picture (COP), and follow up with appropriate DA forms. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus 10 percent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader plans the river reconnaissance. a. Conducted a map reconnaissance of the river. b. Selected the routes for movement to and from the river. c. Selected the rally points (RPs).		
2. The element leader issues the OPORD to the elements. a. Assigned the element's responsibilities and designated the far- and near-shore reconnaissance elements. b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the river. c. Described what actions should be taken in the event of any enemy contact.		
* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the river. a. Ensured that the element dismounted before arriving at the river as required by the tactical situation. b. Ensured that the element displaced tactically.		
4. The element leader observes and records the access-route conditions. a. Included the overhead obstructions having a clearance of less than 4.3 meters. b. Included the reductions in the travel-way width below 18 meters. c. Included the gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater. d. Included the curves having a radius of 25.15 meters or less. e. Included the conditions of road surfaces. f. Included the obstacles that existed; for example, the road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.		
5. The far-shore reconnaissance element conducts a reconnaissance. a. Determined the condition of various points that were identified during the map reconnaissance to include the-- (1) Bank heights. (2) Bank slopes. (3) Soil conditions. (4) Bank obstacles that were natural or man-made.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Estimated the gap width at the river. c. Determined the wet-gap conditions in the vicinity of the river crossing to include the-- (1) River depth at 3.05-meter intervals along the river. (2) Sandbars or other water obstacles. (3) Bottom conditions. (4) River-current fluctuations. d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD. e. Returned to the RP designated by the element leader. 6. The near-bank element conducts a reconnaissance. a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See Subtask 5a. b. Estimated the wet gap at the river. c. Measured the current velocity at the river. d. Collected any other information requested in the element leader's orders. e. Returned to the designated RP. 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the element. a. Ensured that all required information was obtained. b. Disseminated all information to element members. * 8. The element leader directs movement from the river. a. Ensured that the element displaced tactically. b. Directed movement to subsequent rivers as required by the OPORD. Repeated Subtasks 2-7 until the mission was completed. c. Directed the return to the element's assembly area (AA). * 9. The element leader submits the report to the platoon leader. a. Provided a sketch of each river to include the-- (1) Bank heights and slopes. (2) River-bottom profile. (3) River-width estimate. b. Provided other information to include the-- (1) Current velocity. (2) Soil conditions. (3) Route conditions leading to and from the river. (4) Obstacles.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP BREACHER STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Conduct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-3-0407)
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct an engineer reconnaissance for possible assets and obstructions along a proposed movement route. The reconnaissance checklist is completed based on the commander's intent. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and their systems are operational. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element identifies engineer resources in the designated area. The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay, all required reports, and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1711-R. Digital units send reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means and follow up with the appropriate DA forms, and update overlays to provide a current common operational picture (COP). Locations are accurate to within plus or minus 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities are accurate to within plus or minus 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader received a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an engineer reconnaissance. a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or task force (TF) engineer for ground security forces or aviation security forces. b. Requested an enemy situation brief from Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain. d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP). e. The area or the target for the reconnaissance met the commanders intent and requirements; for example, materials, equipment, bivouac, terrain, barriers, and errors or omissions on the map.		
* 2. The element leader prepared an overlay of the designated area. a. Drew routes to scale on the overlay, showed the limit of sector symbols, and terrain features (bridges, water, and such). b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow. c. Prepared a title block. As a minimum, included a name, a social security number (SSN), a unit, a map sheet, a series, a scale, and any remarks such as security classification placed at the top and bottom and downgrade information.		
* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission. a. Used the five-paragraph order format.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Included the area to reconnoiter. (2) Included the method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate. (3) Included the objectives of the reconnaissance. (4) Included the time and distance factors. (5) Included the noise and light discipline. b. Conducted troop-leading procedures. c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). d. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance. 4. The reconnaissance team reconnoitered the designated area and provided detailed information. a. Provided information about the area's special features and structures, such as the bivouac, equipment, materials, water points, terrain, construction sites, and obstacles and barriers to movement. The information included any errors or omissions on the map. b. Reconnoitered the designated area. c. Provided information about the geographical locations utilizing the critical-point symbol with engineer resource symbols. * 5. The element leader reviews the overlay and fills out DA Form 1711-R. a. Checked the overlay for completeness (critical points and engineer resource symbols). b. Ensured that DA Form 1711-R was completed for all engineer resources identified by a critical symbol. c. Recorded all measurements in meters. d. Signed DA Form(s) 1711-R. 6. The element leader briefs the commander on the reconnaissance mission and submits the overlay, reports, and DA Form 1711-R to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD. a. Submitted the completed DA Form(s) 1711-R. b. Submitted the completed overlay and reports.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Conduct an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance (05-3-0411.05-R01A)
(FM 5-170) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 3-34.230)
(FM 5-34) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance of a suspected or reported enemy obstacle location. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element identified and reported all enemy obstacle information critical to the tactical operation. Digital units can send and receive reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update overlays and provide an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA), and follow up with appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms or text messages according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The obstruction locations were identified using 8-digit grid coordinates and were accurate to 20 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and quantities were within 10 percent. The enemy forces did not detect the element. The reconnaissance was completed within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct an obstacle and restriction reconnaissance. The element leader is directed by the unit leader to gather information based on the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), an intelligence report, or a tasking in the intelligence collection plan. a. Gathered known information about the obstacle from the IPB, the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA), or previous reports, such as maps and graphics. b. Obtained the location of the named area of interest (NAI) or reconnaissance route from higher headquarters (HQ). c. Received a not later than report time from the unit leader. d. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. The information included the-- (1) Route to reconnoiter. (2) Method of reconnaissance as either hasty or deliberate. (3) Reconnaissance objectives, such as the obstacle location, the trafficability, and the water points. (4) Radio communications for the progress report, any requested assistance, and the communications check. (5) Actions that the security team and the element members took upon enemy contact. (6) Time and distance factors. (7) Noise and light discipline. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). g. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance. 2. The element moves tactically to a covered and concealed position in overwatch and has visual contact with the obstacle or NAI. a. Gathered information on the obstacle to include the-- (1) Location. (2) Orientation and depth. (3) Conditions of the soil to determine the ability to use mechanical reduction assets on a minefield. (4) Presence, location, and type of wire. (5) Gaps and bypasses. (6) Composition of the minefield; for example, the buried or surface-laid antitank (AT) and antipersonnel (AP) mines, antihandling devices (AHDs), and mine depth. (7) Mine type. (8) Location of enemy direct-fire weapons. (9) Location of enemy indirect-fire systems capable of firing into the reduction area. (10) Composition of complex obstacles. (11) Gaps between successive obstacle belts. NOTE: Physical contact with the obstacle is not required; however, dismounted movement to the obstacle is required to obtain some information. The vehicle remains covered and concealed during the dismounted movement. 3. The element gathers information on the obstacle. a. Included the location. a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms. b. Provided the required overlays. b. Included the orientation and the depth. c. Included the condition of the soil, in the case of a minefield, to determine the ability to use the mechanical reduction assets. d. Included the presence, location, and type of wire. e. Included the gaps and bypasses. f. Included the composition of the minefield; for example, the buried or surface-laid AT and AP mines, AHDs, and mine depth. g. Included the type of mines. h. Included the location of enemy direct-fire weapons. i. Included the location of enemy indirect-fire systems that could have been fired into the reduction area. j. Included the composition of complex obstacles. k. Included the gaps between successive obstacle belts. 4. The element organizes the information in the obstacle report format according to the unit's TSOP. (See FM 20-32, for an example of an obstacle intelligence [OBSTINTEL] report format.) 5. The element leader (along with the entire reconnaissance team) is debriefed by the commander, the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task force (TF) engineer. He then turns over the required completed reconnaissance forms and the overlays. The unit TSOP or the standing operating procedure (SOP) will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Conduct a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-0412)
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)
(FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a technical reconnaissance to locate obstructions along a proposed movement route. Digital units have completed functionality checks, and their systems are operational. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The reconnaissance team conducts a technical reconnaissance to verify the technical data along the main supply route (MSR). All of the Department of the Army (DA) forms contain the required information. There are no time restraints, unless otherwise specified in the FRAGO or an OPORD. Digital units report through digital means, updating overlays, and follow up with appropriate DA forms according to the unit's TSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a technical reconnaissance. a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for ground-security force or aviation-security force. b. Requested an enemy-situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route. d. Reviewed the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the TSOP. e. The area or the target for the reconnaissance met the commander's intent and requirements. f. Briefed the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. g. Conducted troop-leading procedures. h. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). i. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.		
2. The reconnaissance team starts movement on the technical reconnaissance. a. Moved along the specified route. b. Maintained communications with the higher commander.		
3. The reconnaissance team conducts a bridge-classification reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1249. b. Completed DA Form 1249 with the required information according to field manual (FM) 5-170.		
4. The reconnaissance team conducts a ferry reconnaissance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1252. b. Completed DA Form 1252 with the required information according to FM 5-170. 5. The reconnaissance team conducts a ford reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1251. b. Completed DA Form 1251 with the required information according to FM 5-170. 6. The reconnaissance team conducts road reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1248. b. Completed DA Form 1248 with the required information according to FM 5-170. 7. The reconnaissance team conducts a tunnel reconnaissance or an underpass reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete DA Form 1250. b. Completed the DA Form 1250 with the required information according to FM 5-170. NOTE: Not all types of reconnaissance may be applicable to the commander's intent or requirements. 8. The reconnaissance team starts movement to the assembly area (AA). * 9. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit's SOP or the TSOP determines the requirements for the debriefing. 10. The element leader provides the required reconnaissance forms.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance (05-3-0413)
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-34)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-7J) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operations order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical reconnaissance for the purpose of gathering essential data and intelligence in the new area of operations (AO). Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems. Orders, reports, and overlays updating the common operational picture (COP) are available for planning. The area is unsecured and enemy contact is possible. The element will be in continuous tactical operations during daylight and darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), or the task-force (TF) engineer, along with the commander, prepares the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The reconnaissance teams verify and accurately report the intelligence requirements (IR) and the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the S3, the S2, or the TF engineer. This information may be updated by input through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) (this implies digital units that have the capability). All reports, orders, and overlays can be sent or received through digital means. Appropriate follow-up Department of the Army (DA) forms should be submitted according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical reconnaissance. a. Coordinated through the S3 or the TF engineer for the ground-security force or the aviation-security force. b. Requested an enemy-situation brief from the S2. c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route and terrain. d. Reviewed the unit's TSOP or the standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area, the route, or the zone reconnaissance (observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach [OCOKA]).		
* 2. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission. a. Used the five-paragraph order format. (1) Included whether the unit was mounted or dismounted. (2) Included the objectives of the reconnaissance. (3) Included the time and distance factors. (4) Included the noise and light discipline. (5) Included the methods of communication. (6) Included the action of the security team upon enemy contact. b. Conducted troop-leading procedures. c. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance. NOTE: See FM 5-170 for additional reconnaissance techniques. 3. The reconnaissance team supports the area reconnaissance and provides critical information. a. Reconnoitered all the terrain. b. Inspected and classified all the bridges. c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all of the bridges. d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. e. Located the obstacles. f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. g. Located and reported all enemy forces. h. Provided the current and the projected enemy situation. NOTE: See FM 5-170 for more detailed information. 4. The reconnaissance team supports a zone reconnaissance and provides critical information. a. Reconnoitered all the key terrain. b. Inspected and classified all the key bridges. c. Located the suitable fords or crossing sites near all bridges. d. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. e. Located obstacles in the zone determining how to reduce the obstacles (assets and time). f. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. g. Reported any sightings of enemy forces. NOTE: See reference FM 5-170 for more detailed information. 5. The reconnaissance team supports the route reconnaissance and provides critical information. a. Determined the route's trafficability. b. Reconnoitered the limit of direct-fire range and the terrain dominating the route. c. Reconnoitered all built-up areas. (1) Identified the bypass routes. (2) Identified the construction supplies and equipment. (3) Identified the ambush sites. (4) Identified any evidence of booby traps. (5) Identified the suitable sites for command and control facilities and combat service support (CSS) facilities. d. Reconnoitered all the lateral routes to the limit of direct-fire range. e. Inspected and classified all the bridges. f. Located the fords or crossing sites near all bridges. (1) Determined the fordability and located nearby bypasses to support the combat and CSS units. (2) Marked the bridge classifications. (3) Marked the bypass route. g. Inspected and classified all the overpasses, underpasses, and culverts. h. Reconnoitered all the defiles. i. Located obstacles. j. Located the bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas. k. Reported the route information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
l. Located and reported all the enemy forces that could influence movement along the route. * 6. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit's TSOP or SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing. The element leader-- a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms. b. Provided the required overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Support Reconnaissance Operations (05-3-0414)
(FM 5-170) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)
(FM 90-13)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The task force (TF) commander, along with his staff, has prepared a reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The platoon is tasked to support a combined-arms reconnaissance effort as part of a route, zone, or area reconnaissance. Specifics of the reconnaissance requirements are outlined by the mission directive or order. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reconnaissance teams must verify, identify, or obtain intelligence requirements (IR), priority intelligence requirements (PIR), and/or technical information as required by the mission order. All required reconnaissance reports and overlays are completed and accurate. Locations are accurate to within 10 meters. All measurements, dimensions, quantities, and work estimates are accurate to within 10 percent. The reconnaissance effort is completed within the time constraints of the mission order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reviews the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and performs troop-leading procedures. He briefs the reconnaissance team on the specifics of the mission. a. Identified the method of reconnaissance as mounted, dismounted, by fire, or aerial. b. Stated the reconnaissance objective. c. Established time and distance factors. d. Instructed on the noise and light discipline. e. Identified the method of communications. f. Provided instruction on the actions of the security team upon contact.		
2. The engineer reconnaissance team verifies observation and fields of fire, cover, concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA) during the reconnaissance effort. a. Checked vehicle positions. b. Inspected the routes that the battalion will use once the line of departure (LD) or the line of crossing (LC) is crossed. c. Validated fire control references, including target reference points (TRPs) and engagement areas (EAs). d. Checked to ensure that the LDs and phase lines (PLs) could be seen. e. Inspected the terrain at the battalion flanks and rear when within the reconnaissance sector. f. Investigated the danger areas encountered. g. Identified known or suspected enemy locations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The engineer reconnaissance team conducts reconnaissance with the TF reconnaissance team. a. Route reconnaissance. (1) Planned for double-flow track vehicles unless otherwise directed by the commander. (2) Prepared an overlay of the specified route. (a) Drew the route to scale on the overlay. Showed the limit of sector symbols (one each at start and end points). (b) Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or magnetic north arrow. (c) Prepared the title block. As a minimum, the block included the name, social security number (SSN), unit, map sheet, series, scale, and any remarks (such as the security classification [at the top and bottom] and downgrade information). (3) Determined the travel-way width for trafficability. NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6-8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide or wider and double flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide or wider. In the absence of guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow, tracked traffic. (4) Determined the route type. NOTE: X=All-weather route; Y=Limited, all-weather route; Z=Fair-weather route. (5) Determined the military load classification (MLC) of the route, based on the lowest load class of any section of the route. (6) Identified underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC. (7) Recorded terrain features (such as fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constrictions, manmade obstacles, and overhead clearances) on the overlay. (8) Identified any critical points on the route (such as terrain features or obstacles) for detailed explanation on Department of the Army (DA) Form 1711-R. (9) Recorded measurements (in meters) on DA Form 1711-R. (10) Filled out all required DA Forms (1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R). (11) Completed the overlay with all appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location. b. Engineer reconnaissance. (1) Conducted a map reconnaissance using the digital situational awareness (SA) from the unit's equipment and identified all routes in the area, start and stop points, terrain features, release points (RPs), and any other items as identified by the mission orders. (2) Established reconnaissance objectives (materials, equipment, bivouac, terrain, barriers, errors, and omissions on the map). (3) Prepared an SA overlay of the designated area, to include grid reference points, limits of sector, and complete title block. (4) Reconnoitered the area and provided detailed information as determined by the mission order, to include-- (a) Special features and structures of the area (bivouac, equipment, materials, water points, terrain, construction sites, obstacles, and barriers to movement). Included any errors or omissions on the map. (b) Geographical locations (used the critical point symbol with engineer resource symbols).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Any other specific engineer-related data as depicted by the mission or orders. (5) Completed the overlay, DA Form 1711-R, other reconnaissance forms as required, and any other required report or information as required by the mission. c. River-crossing site. (1) Designated near- and far-bank responsibilities and personnel. (2) Conducted a map reconnaissance to identify routes, crossing sites, and RPs as determined by the mission orders. (3) Conducted route reconnaissance to and from the crossing site. (a) Identified possible assembly areas (AAs) at the crossing. (b) Identified turnaround sites. (c) Included other reconnaissance report forms, as required (DA Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R). (4) The far- and near-bank reconnaissance personnel determined at various points as identified during the map reconnaissance the-- (a) Far- and near-bank conditions to include the bank height, slopes, soil conditions, and bank obstacles. (b) River depth at 3-meter intervals. (c) River bottom conditions, including sandbars and other obstacles. (d) River width and current fluctuations. (e) Other information requested in the mission. (5) All personnel moved to the designated RP and briefed the reconnaissance leader, providing all required information, overlays, sketches, and reports. d. Enemy obstacle reconnaissance. (1) Gathered all known information on the enemy obstacle from intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) efforts or intelligence reports and identified the location and/or the reconnaissance route. (2) The reconnaissance team moved tactically to a covered and concealed position in overwatch and visual contact with the obstacle. NOTE: Physical contact with the obstacle is not required. However, dismounted movement to the obstacle is required to obtain some information. The vehicle remains covered and concealed during dismounted movement. (3) The reconnaissance team gathered information on the obstacle, to include the-- (a) Obstacle bypass routes. (b) Location and orientation of the obstacle. (c) Type of obstacle and dimensions (length and width). (d) Presence of wire and/or antipersonnel (AP) or antitank (AT) mines, to include the method of placement and whether they are with or without antihandling devices. (e) Composition and location of the enemy overwatching the obstacle. (f) Best places to breach the obstacle and the terrain feature identifying the breach site. (g) Proposed assault position for the breach force (such as the last covered and concealed position before the breach site). (h) Good overwatch positions. (i) Ways the security forces can bypass the obstacle before the breach occurs. (j) Equipment requirements for reduction of the obstacle. (k) Type or reduction techniques the soil conditions support. (l) Locations of gaps and bypasses.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) The reconnaissance leader organized the information in an obstacle report format. LINE — INFORMATION ALPHA — Map sheet designation. BRAVO — Date and time of collection of information. CHARLIE — Type. DELTA — Coordinates of extremities. ECHO — Depth. FOXTROT — Enemy weapons or surveillance. GOLF — Estimated time to breach. HOTEL — Estimated material and equipment needed to breach. INDIA — Routes for bypassing (if any). JULIET — Coordinates of lane entry (if any). KILO — Coordinates of lane exit (if any). LIMA — Width of lanes, in meters (if any). ZULU — Other. 4. The reconnaissance teams report all information rapidly and accurately. 5. The reconnaissance teams report all information within the time limits as prescribed by the reconnaissance mission and the commander's intent. 6. The reconnaissance teams maintain contact with higher elements throughout the reconnaissance effort.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-4012	CONDUCT PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER
071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt a squad/section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad/section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy's equipment and documents have been captured. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, radios, and so forth. b. Annotated the date and time of capture. c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture. d. Noted the capturing unit. e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture. f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag, if the items were taken from the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of the equipment and documents to higher HQ. a. Described the type of equipment and documents. b. Stated the date and time of capture. c. Identified the capturing unit. d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.		
* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment. b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)
(AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 19-30)
(FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)
(FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic warfare (EW) measures and air- and ground-reconnaissance units. It can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising its main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leaders check or perform information-security measures. a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited the fraternization with civilians, as applicable. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.		
2. The platoon performs camouflage discipline. a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.		
3. The platoon camouflages the individual's positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages the equipment to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit's position. b. Camouflaged the earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were properly erected. d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. f. Ensured that the vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted. g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage, as needed. h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. 4. The platoon employs communications security (COMSEC), and the company's net control station (NCS) enforces COMSEC. a. Enforced the procedures in the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. The platoon ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy. b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Followed the COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence. d. Followed the procedures for operations during jamming. e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service. f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). 5. The platoon employs physical-security measures. a. Employed the observation posts (OPs). b. Employed the counter-reconnaissance patrols. c. Followed the stand-to procedures. d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted. e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire. f. Used the challenge and password. g. Limited the access into the unit's area. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Picked up the litter. j. Employed the air guards. * 6. The platoon leader and all leaders enforce noise and light discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4426	RECOVER AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Fight as Engineers (05-1-1200)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is conducting continuous tactical operations in all weather conditions. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: According to the battalion's standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role move to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element if available. Digital units have the capability to send and receive information via frequency modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit's fire-support officer (FSO).		
2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air-defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.		
3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the personnel status. If required, requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength.		
4. If necessary, the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish assigned missions.		
5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry-type missions. a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air-defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements. b. Initiated the estimation process for infantry-type missions. c. Designated the company's assembly areas (AAs).		
6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains. a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo hauling assets to support the line companies' new needs. b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary. d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the battalion's control in the field trains.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary. (1) Located the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Located the equipment park on defendable terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Conduct Quartering-Party Operations (05-2-0908.05-R01A)
(FM 71-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks and all digital systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party departs ahead of the unit's main body and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units report through frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means (such as the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below [FBCB2] System) their locations according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader organizes the quartering party. a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit. c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Organized a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures. f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). g. Reviewed the unit's SOP and TACSOP. h. Conducted risk-management and safety briefings according to the unit's SOP or TACSOP.		
2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined-arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal (for additional information, see Field Manual [FM] 101-5).		
* 3. The quartering-party leader conducts a map reconnaissance, identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, check points (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the unit's main body, as long as the security was maintained along the route. If security was not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA. 4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy. a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment. b. Loaded the vehicles according to the load plan. c. Prepared the troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags. d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage. * 5. The quartering-party leader briefs the convoy personnel. a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination. b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver). c. Briefed the prescribed rate of march, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles. d. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures. e. Briefed the limited-visibility movement procedures. f. Briefed the chain of command and the radio frequency. 6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA. a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body. b. Reported the route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher commander. 7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions. a. Reported the position of the enemy forces. b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination. c. Evaluated the terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA. d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA. * 8. The quartering-party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area. a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions). b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated Subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions). 9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body. a. Secured the area. b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines. c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post. d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes. e. Marked the vehicle positions. 10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to that element's sector of the AA (mounted, if possible).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

TASK: Disrupt Quartering-Party Operations (5-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting quartering-party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

STANDARD: The opposing forces (OPFOR) attempt to disrupt quartering-party operations and infiltrate the enemy's AA. 1. Locates the quartering party and the AA. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage. 5. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Breach Obstacles (05-3-0004)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver force that is conducting hasty breaching operations. The unit is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. The maneuver force commander designates the support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon creates and marks lanes through the obstacles in order to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The platoon creates the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or observed indirect enemy fire. Friendly forces should sustain no casualties when drifting out of the marked lanes. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacles from the information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance. a. Determined the type of obstacles (log, wire, nuclear weapon, antiairborne, water, beach, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater). b. Determined the obstacle locations and the dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and the frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance of the obstacles and the surrounding terrain (as time permitted and when sufficient detailed information was not available).		
* 2. The platoon leader, in coordination with the task force commander, determines the best method for breaching the obstacles. a. Used the M9 armored combat earthmover (ACE), the armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), and other engineer equipment to perform mechanical obstacle breaching. b. Used the M173, M157, or M58A3 mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC), Antipersonnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS) bangalores, or hand-emplaced charges for explosive obstacle breaching. NOTE: Direct or indirect weapons may also be used; however, they require a high expenditure of ammunition. c. Used planks, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications during manual obstacle-breaching operations. NOTE: Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.		
* 3. The platoon leader, in coordination with the task force (TF) commander, determines the lane characteristics. a. Determined the lane width.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Standard lane widths are 1 meter for a footpath (for personnel only), 4 meters for an initial lane (used to pass assault vehicles), 8 meters for one-way vehicular traffic, and 16 meters for two-way vehicular traffic. b. Determined the number of lanes required. The minimum number of lanes for a maneuver company is one and the minimum number of lanes for a TF company is two. c. Determined the lane locations based on the terrain, the cover and concealment for the breaching force, the time and the equipment available for the breach, and the maneuver scheme.		
4. The platoon clears the obstacle of all mines and booby traps (as required). a. Identified the locations or possible locations of mines, trip wires, and booby traps. b. Neutralized mines and booby traps using line-charged or hand-emplaced explosives. Neutralized the mines prior to committing other engineer equipment to the obstacle reduction task.		
5. The platoon breaches the obstacle and creates the desired lane within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire. No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the platoon is conducting stealth breaching.		
* 6. The platoon leader directs the ACE operator to employ the ACE (when available) to neutralize the effects of the tank ditches, road craters, tetrahedrons, dragon teeth, and similar obstacles. The ACE operator-- a. Started the blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline using small cuts. b. Cut and filled the incline until it was traversable by the maneuver units and the ACE could cross the far bank.		
* 7. The platoon leader directs the employment of the AVLB to span the destroyed and disabled bridges and other gaps not exceeding 18.3 meters. The AVLB operator-- a. Directed the driver to move the launcher to within 3 meters of the gap. b. Directed the driver to launch the bridge with the scissor cylinder. The far end of the bridge did not exceed 61 centimeters above the surface plain. c. Directed the driver to disconnect the bridge from the launcher (upon completion of the launch). d. Directed the AVLB launcher to the designated position. e. Notified the section sergeant upon completion of the relocation.		
8. The platoon reduces the log, steel beam-post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools. (See Field Manual [FM] 5-34 for additional information.)		
9. The platoon reduces wire obstacles with explosive or assault ladders.		
10. The platoon removes rubble using engineer equipment or explosives.		
11. The platoon breaches a tank ditch or other escarpments with pioneer tools (if part of a prebreach operation).		
12. The platoon marks cleared lanes. At a minimum, the platoon marks the entrance and exit points of the lanes. a. Marked (temporarily) the lanes with any available material.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Improved the marking as soon as time and the availability of assets permitted (if the lane improvement task was not passed to a follow-on engineer unit). Used the standard minefield marking set #2 or the M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS). c. Marked the sides of the lanes, when not under enemy fire or as time permitted. *13. The platoon leader reports the lane locations to the higher headquarters according to the unit's SOP. 14. The platoon provides guides or performs obstacle hand-over procedures to ensure a smooth flow of traffic through the lanes. a. Provided guide detachments and instructions for the follow-on forces. b. Performed obstacle hand-over procedures according to the unit's SOP. The gaining unit assumed total responsibility for the obstacle(s). NOTE: Obstacle hand-over procedures enable the follow-on forces to assume the guide requirements as well as the responsibility for maintaining and upgrading the lane(s).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Create a Crater Obstacle with Explosives (05-3-0201)
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to create a crater obstacle. A target reconnaissance has been conducted and the reconnaissance report is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates a crater obstacle within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The crater is a minimum of 1.8 meters deep and 6 meters wide, and the side slopes are a minimum of 25 degrees. Locations are accurate within 10 meters. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank (MBT). Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. They update overlays and provide appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the applicable Standardization Agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report. a. Included a plan and a side-view sketch showing overall dimensions and lines of cut. b. Included the location, depth, and quantity of explosives for each borehole as well as the method of ignition for each row of craters planned. c. Included a sketch showing firing circuits and firing points. d. Included a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types required, a list of required equipment, and an estimate of the time and labor required to prepare and fire the demolition. 2. The element picks up all materials and equipment needed for the demolition. 3. The element prepares demolitions in the rear to minimize the time on site; for example, cutting branch lines and priming blocks of explosives with detonating cord. NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear. 4. The element leader issues orders to the element using the five-paragraph field-order format. 5. The element leader briefs each man on site security, noise and light discipline, and each member's specific tasks. 6. The element moves to the obstacle location. 7. The element places the shaped charges in locations identified by the element leader.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct and/or indirect fire and tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. 8. The element connects the branch lines to the ring main and then primes the shaped charges. NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets. a. Did not dual prime the shaped charges. b. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-hooks). c. Primed the shaped charges using M11s or M16s. d. Ensured that the single-primed shaped charges were dual-initiated. 9. The element detonates the shape charges. a. Attached the dual-initiation system to the detonating cord. b. All element members were a safe distance away. 10. The element prepares the holes blown by shaped charges to achieve the correct depth for the crater being employed. a. Ensured that all the holes for a hasty crater were 1.5 meters deep. b. Ensured that the holes for a deliberate crater were alternately 1.5 meters and 2 meters deep, with 2-meter holes on both ends. c. Ensured that the enemy row of a relieved-face crater had 1.3-meter holes and the friendly row had 1.5-meter holes. 11. The element dual primes all boreholes. See FM 5-250. a. In holes with only one cratering charge (1.5 meters deep), dual-primed by placing a primed package of composition 4 explosive (C4) on the placement indicator marks and a second package of C4 parallel on the opposite side of the cratering charge and flush with the top. b. In holes with two cratering charges, primed both crater charges by placing a primed package of C4 on the placement indicator marks. When placing the cratering charge in the borehole, ensured that the packages of C4 were on opposite sides of each other. 12. The element lays the ring mains and ties in the branch lines with demolition knots or J-hooks. NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets. a. Ensured that two ring mains were required for each row of holes. On relieved-face craters, the friendly-row ring mains were covered with 15 centimeters of earth to prevent the detonating cord from being cut when the enemy row was detonated. b. Ensured that each system was independent. c. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and the branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-hooks.). NOTE: If traffic must pass over the site before detonation, the branch lines and the ring mains are placed in 15-centimeter deep trenches, covered with a "U" shaped picket, and backfilled with earth. 13. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and detonate.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
14. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 (if a preliminary target) and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. Permission may have been given to execute the target upon completion. In that case the target is brought to state 2 and detonated. *15. Prior to firing, the element leader may hand over the target to a demolition-firing party. Whenever possible, the hand-over procedures are as detailed as those in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See FM 5-250. 16. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ. If authority is given, improves the obstacle by laying the mines. a. Recorded the mines on DA Form 1355. b. Placed the mines at enemy-side approaches first, followed by the gap between the first and second lines of cut on the enemy side.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Disable a Bridge with Explosives (05-3-0202)
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34) (TM 9-1300-214)
(TM 9-1375-213-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to execute a preliminary (as opposed to reserve) bridge demolition. A target reconnaissance has been conducted and Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R and/or a target folder is available. The gap is at least 25 meters wide. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares the bridge for demolition within plus 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. On order, the element executes the demolition of the bridge to block or delay the enemy. Digital units submit reports, obstacle locations, and appropriate DA forms according to the unit's tactical standard operating procedures (TSOP), mission dictating. The obstacle stops or delays all enemy wheeled and tracked vehicles. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means and forward appropriate DA forms, mission dictating. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader obtains the following technical information from the reconnaissance report: a. Sketches of the target showing how and where to place the charges. b. The quantities and type of explosives required for each charge and the total mission. c. A sketch of the firing points. d. Estimates of the time, labor, and equipment requirements for the demolition mission.		
* 2. The element draws the explosives and any of the additional tools or equipment according to the reconnaissance report. NOTE: If possible, place the caps in a closed metal can and carry them separate from the explosives in the rear.		
* 3. Using the five-paragraph field-order format, the element leader issues orders to the element detailing each soldier's job. Covers site security as well as noise and light discipline.		
4. The element moves to the bridge location.		
5. The crew assembles and places the charges. a. Assembled the charges in the rear area to minimize the time spent on the bridge, when possible. b. Placed the correctly sized charges on the members to be cut according to the information contained in the reconnaissance report.		
6. The element lays the ring mains.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Line mains can be used instead of ring mains, except on reserve targets. a. Tied in the branch lines with demolition knots or J-hooks. NOTE: J-hooks are used in conjunction with modernized demolition initiator (MDI) systems. b. Ensured that the detonating-cord ring mains and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other or themselves (except where connected by demolition knots or J-hooks). 7. The element prepares the demolition to state 1 and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that they are ready to detonate the target. (In the event that permission was given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and detonated). NOTE: The element leader may hand over the target to a demolition firing party before firing. The hand-over procedures are as detailed as those found in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See Field Manual (FM) 5-250. 8. If the element fires the demolition, only one soldier (with an noncommissioned officer [NCO] supervising) connects the blasting caps to the ring mains. All remaining element members were a safe distance away. See FM 5-34 or FM 5-250. * 9. The element leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and demolition results to higher HQ. a. Improved the obstacle by laying mines on enemy-side approaches and on possible bypass or bridge sites. b. Recorded the mines on DA Form 1355.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-256-3034	ORGANIZE JOBSITE SECURITY	STP 5-62N34-SM-TG

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-0305)
(FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element supports a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs vehicle positions providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. Digital units can send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades.		
* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver-unit vehicles requiring positions. See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.		
* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.		
4. The platoon reports the intermediate status and the completion of the construction to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Prepared the parapet positions for field artillery or for air-defense artillery (ADA) weapons. (1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation. Built it low enough so that it allowed direct howitzer fire or so that it did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons. (2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather. (3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting. (4) Ensured that the positions were the correct length, width, depth, and parapet thickness. See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions. b. Prepared the deep-cut vehicle positions for protection of the support vehicles. (1) Positioned the vehicles so that the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the surrounding wall-rim top. (2) Prepared the positions, opened on both ends, with an optional rear wall. (3) Placed the camouflage netting across the top of the position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Ensured that the positions were the correct dimensions (length, width, and depth) according to FM 5-103.		
* 5. The platoon leader reports mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Construct Combat Road/Trails (05-3-0705)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct a combat trail or road. The order specifies the start and finish points, the general route location, lane requirements, the traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and the completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs the combat road/trail, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed, no later than the time prescribed in the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital systems to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the leader-- a. Coordinated with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials. b. Coordinated with the company for a trafficability test set. 2. The platoon leader/platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security. 3. The platoon constructs a combat trail. a. Established the start and finish points as specified in the order and following the general route. b. Cleared and grubbed the route as required. Removed trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and topsoil impeding smooth vehicle movement to the depth of the topsoil. c. Ensured that the trail was one lane wide or 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet plus or minus 3 feet). d. Ensured that no route grade exceeded the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades. e. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. The expedient surface depended on the available materials. NOTE: Refer to Field Manual (FM) 5-430-00-1 for surface installation techniques. 4. The platoon constructs a combat road. a. Established start and finish points as specified in the OPORD. Followed the general route. b. Cleared and grubbed the route. Removed trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rocks, and topsoil to the depth of the topsoil. c. Ensured that the road's width was according to the mission directive. A one-lane road was 6 meters plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet plus or minus 3 feet); a two-lane road was 12 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (40 feet plus or minus 3 feet).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensured that no route grade exceeded the capability of the expected vehicles. Made cuts and fills or minor route centerline changes to correct excessive grades. e. Used the trafficability test set and ensured the trafficability rating cone index met or exceeded the vehicle cone index according to FM 5-430-00-1. f. Ensured that flowing water did not interfere with the traffic flow. Ensured that expedient fords or culverts carried water across/under the road. (1) Constructed an expedient ford. (a) Ensured that slopes for approaches were no greater than 1:3 for wheeled and 1:2 for tracked vehicles. (b) Removed material from the banks to the side of the approach and ensured that it was not deposited in the stream. (2) Prepared the bottom of the ford. (a) Filled short, deep gaps with rock or gravel. (b) Prepared soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel. (c) Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter (20 feet, plus or minus 3 feet). (3) Marked the edges of the ford. Ensured that the poles extended at least 1.5 meters above the water level and were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford. (4) Assembled/installed culverts. (5) Constructed roadside ditches as required. g. Installed expedient surfacing according to the mission directive or surface situation. (The expedient surface depends on the available materials.) NOTE: Refer to FM 5-430-00-1 for details of surface installation techniques. * 5. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Disengage (Dismounted) (05-3-1222)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is moving dismounted and receives enemy fire, or the platoon is occupying untenable defensive positions. The platoon leader orders the platoon to disengage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon moves to a position where the enemy cannot observe or place direct fire on it. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon breaks contact while moving dismounted.		
* 2. The platoon leader directs the platoon to break contact by giving a direction and a distance to move using the "clock method" (for example, 9 o'clock, 300 meters).		
3. The platoon members move to the last designated rally point using the withdrawal methods listed in task step 2, if factors prohibit the platoon leader from giving specific instructions.		
* 4. The platoon members select routes providing cover and concealment using the low-crawl, high-crawl, and rush techniques of movement.		
5. The platoon leader submits a spot report (SPOTREP) to the unit commander.		
6. The platoon leader accounts for personnel and reorganizes the platoon at the rally point. a. Reported the platoon status to the unit commander. b. Designated personnel to perform critical functions. c. Reestablished the chain of command. d. Redistributed ammunition. e. Reported the supply status. f. Treated and evacuated casualties. g. Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points when the situation permitted. h. Collected and reported enemy information and material.		
7. The platoon continues the mission as specified in the operation order (OPORD).		
* 8. The platoon prepares to disengage while in a defensive position, before enemy contact.		
9. The platoon leader plans the disengagement/withdrawal based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). a. Designated a point providing the vehicle teams with good observation, fields of fire, and cover and concealment for the dismount element to remount.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Ensured that each platoon member knew the withdrawal signal by conducting rehearsals and briefing the platoon. c. Designated covered and concealed routes to the remount point. Time and situation permitting, the platoon leader ensured that the platoon members knew the route by having each member walk the route.		
10. The platoon prepares for disengagement. a. Redistributed ammunition. b. Conducted personnel and equipment inspections. c. Repositioned key weapons. d. Conducted rehearsals if time permitted.		
11. The platoon conducts a withdrawal.		
12. The platoon leader gives the signal for and indicates the method of withdrawal based on enemy pressure.		
13. The platoon disengages by thinning of lines when enemy pressure is close and heavy and the platoon's vehicles cannot overwatch the dismount element.		
14. The squad leaders designate selected personnel to disengage and move to the rear and assume overwatch positions. The remaining personnel-- a. Increased the rate of fire to keep the enemy from overrunning the position. b. Withdrew when the group in the overwatch positions provided suppressive fire. c. Moved the M60s and squad automatic weapons (SAWs) where they provided the best fire support (FS) for movement when bounding rearward.		
15. The leaders remain on line and move with the last element to withdraw and maintain maximum control.		
16. The platoon's personnel continue this method of fire and movement to the rear until they link up with the platoon's vehicles.		
17. The rifle teams disengage when enemy pressure decreases. Engages the enemy with a high volume of fire.		
18. The link-up vehicles deliver a high volume of well-aimed fire with automatic weapons and overwatch the withdrawal of the dismount element.		
19. The second rifle team moves to the rear to take up an overwatch position.		
20. The teams repeat this method of fire and movement to the rear, as necessary, until the dismount element and platoon vehicles can linkup.		
21. The dismount element and platoon vehicles link up at the remount point.		
22. The rifle teams mount the vehicles.		
23. The link-up vehicles move from the area by covered and concealed routes, keeping at least one terrain feature between the vehicle and the enemy.		
24. The platoon continues to withdraw until enemy contact is broken.		
25. The platoon leader submits a size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) report to the unit commander and reorganizes the platoon.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: React to an Ambush (05-3-1225)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A platoon is moving either dismounted or mounted when the enemy initiates an ambush. Part of the platoon is in the kill zone. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element in the kill zone disengages or the platoon forces the enemy to withdraw--

Near ambush: Within 3 seconds (13 seconds, mounted), personnel in the kill zone assume prone positions, return fire, and throw concussion or fragmentation and smoke grenades. Within 3 seconds, personnel not in the kill zone locate and place suppressive fire on the enemy and shift fire as the assault begins.

Far ambush: Within 3 seconds (13 seconds for disabled vehicles), personnel in the kill zone assume prone positions and immediately return fire. Within 3 more seconds, personnel locate and engage the enemy with well-aimed fire. Within 5 seconds, vehicles move out of the kill zone or assume covered positions in the kill zone. Within 3 seconds, personnel not in the kill zone begin fire and movement to destroy the enemy. Digital units send messages via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The dismounted platoon in a kill zone reacts to a near ambush (within hand-grenade range). a. Carried out immediately one of two actions without orders or signals. If cover was not available, assumed the prone position, returned fire, and threw fragmentation and smoke grenades. If cover was available, immediately sought the nearest covered position, returned fire, and threw fragmentation and smoke grenades. b. Returned fire and assaulted the ambush position upon explosion of the fragmentation grenades or when the supporting element suppressed enemy fire. c. Placed the heaviest possible volume of suppressive fire against the ambush position. d. Deployed the Grizzly as a reaction and area-cover fire weapon. The Bradley engineer squad vehicles provided firepower and armor protection. 2. The dismounted platoon in a kill zone reacts immediately to a far ambush (out of hand-grenade range) without orders or signals. a. Assumed a prone position and returned fire. b. Sought the best available position to continue well-aimed fire at the ambush position. 3. The platoon reacts to an ambush while mounted.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Moved the vehicles out of the kill zone or took a covered and concealed position within the kill zone. b. Dismounted disabled vehicles in the kill zone to provide a base of fire. c. Conducted fire and movement with vehicles and personnel not in the kill zone. d. Placed the highest possible volume of suppressive fire against the ambush position with personnel in the kill zone. * 4. The platoon leader evaluates the situation and determines a course of action (COA) (either to attack or disengage). NOTE: 1. The platoon leader may elect to attack before the platoon reaches its objective, depending upon the enemy's strength, capabilities, and disposition, or if time is critical and the mission warrants the added risk. 2. The platoon leader may elect to disengage if the unit is outnumbered by the enemy. The platoon can disengage to prepare for a counterattack, withdraw, or continue the mission. * 5. The platoon leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) to include enemy contact and casualty information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Establish a Hasty Position (05-3-1226)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is ordered by the company commander to halt for an indefinite period. The platoon leader orders the platoon to establish hasty fighting positions. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon establishes local security and tenable defensive positions which provides early warning and protection from the enemy attack. Digital units update friendly locations, send reports or orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The platoon is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leaders conduct a reconnaissance of tentative fighting positions. The-- a. Drivers stopped the vehicles in covered and concealed positions. b. Personnel dismounted and assumed tentative hasty fighting positions. c. Leaders checked the tentative positions. d. Leaders designated sectors and general locations for observation posts (OPs), vehicles, M60s, squad automatic weapons (SAWs), and AT4s. NOTE: At night, leaders take special precautions in designating positions. They reconnoiter the area first, position the OPs, and then have guides bring the other members into position.		
2. The designated security or OP team moves to an assigned position and sets up security.		
3. The platoon members prepare designated positions.		
* 4. The vehicle commanders guide the vehicles into existing hull-down, covered and concealed positions, such as reverse slopes, ravines, saddles, ditches, and draws.		
* 5. The platoon leader assigns each vehicle a primary forward position, at least one alternate position, and a sector of fire.		
* 6. The platoon leader assigns each rifle team to a primary and alternate position, crew-served weapons to a sector of fire, and AT4s to cover likely avenues of approach.		
7. The soldiers prepare prone positions at least 50 centimeters deep, using holes and ditches if available.		
* 8. The leaders rapidly check positions selected by platoon members. NOTE: At this point, the platoon leader may begin a more deliberate defense. The platoon leader selects exact fighting positions, coordinates with adjacent elements,		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
and so forth. The platoon members prepare positions according to the platoon leader's order or the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Secure at a Halt (05-3-1232)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is moving while mounted when the unit leader orders a halt. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within one minute, vehicle commanders move their vehicles into a herringbone or a coil formation, using available cover and concealment. Digital units send requests, reports, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The unit is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader gives the signal to halt the unit. The unit halts in a-- a. Herringbone formation (temporary halt during a tactical road march or movement in a column formation). b. Coil formation (prolonged halt or when 360 degree security is necessary). NOTE: The unit leader ensures that each vehicle commander positions his vehicle using available cover and concealment as part of the selected formation within 1 minute.		
* 2. The vehicle commander ensures that security is maintained by either keeping the element mounted or dismounting all or part of the element based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). a. Ensured that element members, including air guards, continued to observe designated sectors. b. Ensured that members man and direct crew-served weapons toward assigned sectors. c. Ensured that the dismounted element members assumed hasty fighting positions.		
3. The vehicle commanders take appropriate action at the halt. a. Maintained visual, digital, or radio communication with the unit leader. b. Conducted during-operation maintenance according to the applicable technical manual (TM) as time permitted. c. Refueled the vehicles and resupplied needed supplies, if necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Cross a Danger Area (Dismounted) (05-3-1233)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is moving dismounted and encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon elements prevent the enemy from surprising or decisively engaging the main body. The platoon sustains no more than 10 percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when it is conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon encounters a danger area.		
2. The point man signals "danger area" which is relayed throughout the platoon.		
3. The platoon halts to maintain local security.		
* 4. The platoon leader moves forward to the point man to confirm the danger area.		
* 5. The platoon leader selects the crossing point providing the best cover and concealment.		
* 6. The platoon leader informs all squad leaders of the situation and the nearside and farside rally points.		
* 7. The platoon leader positions nearside security in a location providing cover and concealment.		
* 8. The platoon leader selects a farside clearing method based on observable terrain. a. Used the box method when terrain was more open and a larger area was cleared. Used two men in successive boxes; four men in simultaneous boxes. b. Used the zigzag method in dense vegetation to cover more of the immediate area. NOTE: The heart method takes less time and can be successive or simultaneous.		
* 9. The nearside security element provides security. a. Observed flanks. b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security element.		
10. The farside security element clears the farside. a. Ensured that the nearside security element was in place, then directed the farside security element to cross the danger area. b. Cleared the farside, especially any terrain such as small hills, folds, and streambeds that might conceal enemy positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*11. The squad leader receives the all-clear signal and relays the message to the platoon leader.		
*12. The platoon leader establishes an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area.		
*13. The platoon leader selects the method the platoon will use to cross the danger area (in groups, a wedge, or a line).		
14. The platoon crosses the danger area quickly and quietly while the nearside security elements overwatch the platoon's crossing.		
15. The main body establishes local security once they are across the danger area.		
16. The nearside security elements cross the danger area and regain their positions in the formation.		
17. The platoon continues the mission. a. Accounted for all members. b. Resumed tactical movement. c. Maintained the designated formation and personnel intervals.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5630	CONDUCT MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Move Through Urbanized Terrain (05-3-1237)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon leader directs the platoon to move through a built-up area. Enemy contact is possible. The platoon must provide its own security. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon moves all personnel and equipment through the urban area. The platoon elements prevent the enemy from surprising or decisively engaging the main body. The platoon sustains no more than 10 percent casualties. Digital units report, send messages, and update the headquarters (HQ) via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon halts outside the urban area.		
2. The crews of weapon-mounted vehicles, if available, seek cover and concealment to observe and cover urban areas.		
* 3. The platoon leader scans the urban area to determine a route through the urban area.		
* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement element and an overwatch element.		
5. The rifle teams dismount.		
6. The platoon moves as two elements, a movement element and an overwatch element. a. The movement element consisted of either one or two teams. The element used two teams when the terrain was open (for example, a wide street) and moved forward to scout for danger areas. b. The overwatch element consisted of weapon-mounted vehicles and the remaining teams. The overwatch element followed the movement element to secure the flanks and rear, and provided fire support (FS).		
7. The platoon uses a covered and concealed route whenever possible. a. Moved along underground passages, through or behind buildings, along walls, and over rooftops. b. Avoided streets, alleys, and other open areas unless absolutely necessary.		
8. The platoon uses cover and concealment when moving along a street. a. Moved in single file along the side of the street, staying close to the buildings. b. Moved quickly and remained dispersed 3 to 5 meters apart. c. Assigned soldiers an area on the opposite side of the street to observe. d. Overwatched the buildings across the street, above the opposite team, with two teams parallel to each other on opposite sides of the street.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Staggered vehicles on alternate sides of the street, staying close to buildings to decrease exposure to antiarmor weapons. 9. The platoon crosses danger areas using maximum cover, concealment, speed, and overwatch techniques. a. Used smoke, rubble, and debris for protection. b. Avoided soldier-by-soldier movement. The element crossed simultaneously as a dispersed group. 10. The platoon moves at a steady, rapid speed while maintaining security. a. Varied the movement rate with the terrain, mission, and threat. b. Cleared buildings as necessary to continue movement. c. Identified, reported, marked, and bypassed enemy obstacles and mines. *11. The platoon leader reports to higher HQ when the platoon is through the urban area. The digital unit's enhanced reporting capability is used as necessary		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Clear a Building (05-3-1238)
(FM 7-7) (FM 90-10-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is required to clear a building. An enemy squad has established a hasty defense in the building. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building. The platoon repels an enemy counterattack. The unit sustains no more than 30-percent casualties. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP 4).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader organizes the platoon into a support force and an assault force. The composition of the assault force varies depending on the availability of equipment and personnel and the tactical situation.		
2. The squad-size building clearing force forms into two groups, an assault force and a support force. a. The assault force consisted of two 3-man teams carrying only a fighting load of equipment and as much ammunition as possible, especially grenades. The assault force was responsible for breaching and clearing the targeted building. b. The support force consisted of one 3- (or more) man team responsible for providing suppressive fire and obscuration with automatic weapons, M203 grenade launchers, MK19s, M202 multishot flame weapons, and smoke. The amount and type of weapons required depended on the availability and the situation. Indirect fire support (FS), demolitions, tank main-gun rounds, machine-gun fire, and so forth, were used, if required.		
3. The support force provides FS for the assault force. a. Suppressed or obscured enemy gunners within the objective building and adjacent buildings. b. Isolated the objective building with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement, or counterattack. c. Used direct fire to destroy enemy positions. d. Breached walls en route to and in the objective structure. e. Destroyed enemy positions with direct fire. f. Secured cleared portions of the objective. g. Provided a replacement for the assault force. h. Provided a resupply of ammunition and explosives. i. Evacuated casualties and prisoners.		
4. The assault force minimizes enemy defensive fires during movement to the objective. a. Used covered and concealed routes; exploited limited visibility conditions whenever possible. b. Moved only after enemy defensive fires were suppressed or obscured. c. Moved along routes without masking friendly suppressive fires.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Crossed open areas under concealment of smoke after the support force suppressed enemy targets.		
5. The assault force enters the objective building at the highest level possible. The force enters from the rooftop and adjacent buildings, if possible, using climbing ropes, ladders, or helicopters. If forced to enter at ground level, the assault force approaches from the enemy flank or rear, avoiding windows and doors and entering through breached walls, if possible.		
6. The support force increases its rate of fire to mask the assault immediately before the assault force enters the objective building.		
7. The support force shifts fire first to the objective's upper windows and then to adjacent buildings if the assault force enters from ground level. The support force shifts support fire to the lower windows when the assault force enters through the upper story. When the assault force is inside, the support force shifts fire to the adjacent building to prevent enemy withdrawal or reinforcement.		
8. The assault force closes on the building. Before entering, a grenade is cooked off and vigorously thrown inside. After the explosion, assault teams enter and spray the interior, concentrating on areas of the room that are possible enemy positions.		
9. The assault force's priority tasks are to cover the staircases leading up and down, and to seize rooms that overlook approaches to the building once inside the building.		
10. The assault force clears the rooms.		
*11. The assault team leader determines which rooms to clear first.		
12. The support team provides suppressive fire on the target building during clearing operations and to adjacent buildings, preventing enemy reinforcements or withdrawal, while assault team 1 establishes a foothold to the building.		
13. Assault team 2 positions to provide security for the foothold while assault team 1 proceeds to clear the first room. a. Soldier 1 throws a grenade into the room and yells, "FRAG OUT," or "GRENADE" to alert friendly personnel. NOTE: Flash bang grenades are the only grenades used to clear rooms before entry. b. Soldier 2 enters the room after the explosion and positions himself to the right of the door up against the wall, scanning the room from left to right while soldiers 1 and 3 provide outside room security. Soldier 2 gives the all clear before soldier 3 enters. c. Soldier 3 enters and positions himself to the right of the door up against the wall and scans the room from right to left. Soldier 2 provides inside room security while soldier 1 provides outside room security. Soldier 3 proceeds to clear the room. d. Assault team 1 shouts, "COMING OUT," after the room is cleared and proceeds to clear the next room. e. A soldier from assault team 2 positions himself to cover the cleared room. f. The assault force continues this procedure until the entire floor is cleared. After the floor is cleared, the assault force consolidates to continue the assault on the remainder of the building. g. The assault force marks the cleared rooms according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
14. The assault and support forces consolidate and reorganize after the building is cleared. a. Positioned themselves to cover enemy routes of counterattack and infiltration in the building. b. Redistributed ammunition and requested resupply as required. c. Treated and evacuated casualties. d. Marked the building to show it had been cleared, including the entry points. e. Established hasty defensive positions, if required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3027	LOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3028	UNLOAD AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: React to Contact (05-3-7122)
(FM 7-7) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 17-95)
(FM 5-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon, moving mounted or dismounted, makes visual contact with the enemy or encounters enemy fire. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element returns fire within 3 seconds, locates and engages the enemy with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds, and causes at least one enemy casualty. The leader can point out at least one-half of the enemy positions and identify the types of weapons, such as small arms or light machine guns. Digital units send messages and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element makes visual contact with the enemy, evaluates the situation, and determines a course of action (COA).		
* 2. The element leader chooses to bypass if the enemy is not a threat and the mission is not impeded.		
* 3. The element leader gives the order to conduct fire and movement if the enemy is a threat or the mission is impeded.		
4. The element reacts to enemy fire. a. Took cover immediately and returned fire within 3 seconds. b. Located actual or suspected enemy positions and engaged them with well-aimed fire within 3 more seconds. c. Made contact (visual or verbal) with the element members on their left and right.		
* 5. The element leader communicates with the element members. a. Relayed commands and signals to the squad leaders. b. Made frequent visual contact with the squad leaders.		
* 6. The squad leaders communicate with the squad members. a. Checked the status of the squad members either visually or verbally. b. Relayed commands and signals from the element leader.		
* 7. The element leader evaluates the situation and determines the COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used an assault element to attack the objective by using fire and movement if the enemy was outnumbered or the mission was impeded. b. Gave the order to disengage to defend from another battle position, prepared a counterattack, withdrew, or continued the mission if the element was outnumbered.		
* 8. The element leader sends a spot report (SPOTREP) and includes enemy contact and casualty information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.02-0001	Enforce Platoon and Company Communications Security Measures	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-9001.19-0001	Take Charge of a Platoon or Equivalent Organization	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2025	MAINTAIN AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	PERFORM A FUNCTION CHECK ON AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	LOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	UNLOAD AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2029	CORRECT MALFUNCTIONS OF AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4401	PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert INCOMING or a round impacts on or near their location. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within two seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. Digital units having advanced digital capability report the unit's new location through frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means, as required by the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) to update the situational awareness (SA) and the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.		
2. The element leader gives the direction and the distance for the unit to move; for example, 3 o'clock, 200 meters.		
3. The vehicle commanders repeat the INCOMING to squad personnel.		
4. The element personnel close all hatches.		
* 5. The element drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.		
6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicle-- (1) Halted as closely as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel, keeping low, ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.		
7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Protected personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions, if dismounted. 8. The element's members move to designated rally points according to the element's operation order (OPORD). 9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 10. The element consolidates and reorganizes. 11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP). Digital units having enhanced reporting capability report using digital capability.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Perform Passage of Lines (07-2-0333.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 21-60) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The element is operating as a separate unit. The enemy can attack with indirect fire, aircraft, or company-size mounted or dismounted forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company moves all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit no later than the time specified in the order. The unit's main body is not surprised by the enemy during the departure from friendly lines. The unit sustains no casualties from friendly fire. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives the operation order (OPORD). a. Initiated planning for the operation. b. Conducted coordination for the operation.		
* 2. The passing element leader meets with the stationary element leader. a. Arranged for a specific time. b. Determined the meeting location.		
* 3. The passing element leader or his authorized representative coordinates the passage through and the reentry of lines with the forward element leader or his authorized representative. a. Ensured that personnel from both elements were aware of each element's identification. b. Kept the stationary element leader informed of the size of the passing element. c. Coordinated the times of departure and return. d. Defined the area of operations (AO).		
* 4. The passing leader or his authorized representative coordinates with the stationary leader. a. Exchanged enemy intelligence information. b. Completed a joint reconnaissance of the position. c. Explained the passing element's scheme of maneuver. d. Coordinated recognition signals for the passage, both near and far. e. Planned for guides and passage control measures. f. Coordinated security measures for the passage. g. Designated fire-support (FS) responsibilities and fire plans. h. Exchanged information on the terrain and the existing obstacles. i. Determined when and where the battle handover occurs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Coordinated combat-service support (CSS) for the items left on the position.		
* 5. Both leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage. a. Planned the locations of the contact points. b. Pointed the locations of the passage points. c. Identified release points (RPs) and the battle handover line. d. Exchanged call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, and challenge and passwords.		
* 6. Both leaders perform a leader reconnaissance of the passage area. a. Located the passage-of-lines points. b. Identified the obstacle locations and safety lines. c. Pointed out the RPs. d. Reconnoitered the assembly area (AA) for the rearward passage. e. Identified the contact points. f. Walked the stationary element positions. g. Identified combat support (CS) and CSS elements (command posts [CPs], observation posts [OPs], and antiarmor and mortar positions). h. Ensured that the leader's reconnaissance and other activities did not reveal the operation to the enemy.		
* 7. The passing leader checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas. a. Exchanged intelligence information on the enemy. b. Exchanged terrain data.		
8. The passing element arrives in the stationary element area. a. Moved into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting with the stationary leader. b. Started final preparations for the passage of lines.		
9. The passing element leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination. a. Briefed the element on what was happening and what was going to happen. b. Confirmed the chain of command. c. Prescribed actions to be taken on contact. d. Briefed actions to be taken in the absence of the leader. e. Provided a time schedule, a suspense list, and any limits on actions.		
*10. The passing element leader completes coordination with the stationary element leader. a. Confirmed recognition signals for the passage, both near and far. b. Coordinated with the guides. c. Confirmed traffic-control measures. d. Confirmed security measures for the passage. e. Collocated both leaders to observe critical areas, make timely decisions, and facilitate battle handover.		
11. The passing element moves to a position near the point of contact. a. Moved at the designated time. b. Provided cover and concealment during movement and at the position near the point of contact.		
12. The passing element's security team passes through the passage lanes. a. Linked up with the guides from the stationary element. b. Moved with the guides from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Cleared the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position. d. Reported when the area was secure. 13. The remainder of the passage element moves through the passage lanes. a. Moved forward to the RPs. b. Identified and accounted for passage personnel (as confirmed by the guides) as the element passed through the RP. c. Ensured that movement was continuous throughout the passage. d. Executed a security halt after the company had moved beyond the friendly element's final protective fires (FPF). e. Executed the movement of the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), and the platoon sergeant (PSG) from the RP forward, only after the leader was sure that he did not have to withdraw through the passage point. 14. The passing element makes a reentry through the friendly lines. a. Halted the element and established the reentry rally point. NOTE to the National Guard (NG): If in contact with the enemy, the element does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary element lead the element through the passage points, or long-range signals are used. b. Contacted the forward element by radio and told them, by the use of a prearranged code word, that the element was ready to reenter. (The leader may opt to keep the element outside of friendly lines until daybreak.) c. Acknowledged receipt of the message. 15. The forward element directs a security team on an azimuth and distance to the contact point. a. Established contact with the stationary element guides using far- and near-recognition signals. b. Signaled the element forward or went back and led the element to the passage point. c. Counted and identified each element as it passed through the passage point (1SG or XO and PSG). 16. The element, led by a guide from the stationary element, moves through the passage point and to the AA behind the friendly element. The leader-- a. Ensured that casualties were treated and evacuated upon arrival at the AA. b. Reported to the stationary element CP; provided tactical information concerning the area of responsibility. 17. The passing leader links up with his element in the AA. a. Prepared the element for movement to a secure area. b. Led the element to a secure area. c. Conducted the debriefing.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)
(TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined-arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the element's main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. a. Selected the quartering-party personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew, based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined the essential equipment needed.		
* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Relayed the time of the main body's arrival at the AA. d. Identified the order of march. e. Relayed the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level.		
3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march. a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the route of march from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked the obstacles and bypass routes. e. Reported critical information to the element quartering-party leader.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival. a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted the guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked the vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed the mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security. 5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved the quartering-party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. 6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned the vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established the observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and frequency modulated (FM) communications between all positions. Used wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared the range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged the positions. i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early-warning devices. 7. The element performs internal operation of the AA. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed the ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established the personal-hygiene and field-sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted the rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. * 8. The element leader coordinates with the element on the left and the right as a minimum. a. Established the responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the element's signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ). 9. The leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact. 10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0007	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An operation order (OPORD) requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Digital units have completed functionality checks of digital systems and they are operational. Threat-mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company's standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Digital units send and receive orders, overlays and locations via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The elements commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets. a. Indicated the start point (SP). b. Identified the locations of friendly units. c. Pointed out the potential ambush sites. d. Identified the checkpoints. e. Pointed out the sites to be used for scheduled halts. f. Indicated the release point (RP).		
2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available. a. Wore the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices. d. Verified the map information. e. Listed the capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Listed the locations of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Prepared the strip map.		
* 3. The convoy commander coordinates with higher headquarters (HQ) for the following required support: a. Military Police (MP). b. Medical. c. Fire support (FS). d. Engineer. e. Maintenance contact team. f. Additional requirements, as required.		
4. The company prepares the vehicles and the equipment. a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Corrected minor deficiencies. c. Reported major deficiencies. d. Hardened the vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials. e. Covered unit identification markings on the vehicles and personnel. f. Covered or removed the reflective surfaces. g. Placed the antennas at their lowest height. h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.		
* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy. a. Assigned cargo-vehicle positions. b. Positioned the control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigned the recovery vehicles position. d. Arranged the hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy. e. Specified passenger locations. f. Appointed air guards. g. Organized the trail party element. h. Provided vehicle-position listings to the trail party leader.		
* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel. a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Identified the convoy chain of command. c. Detailed the convoy route. d. Prescribed the rate-of-march speed and the catch-up speed. e. Specified convoy intervals. f. Identified the scheduled halts. g. Briefed the accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefed the immediate-action security measures. i. Briefed the blackout-condition procedures. j. Specified the location of medical support. k. Specified the location of maintenance support. l. Briefed the communication procedures. m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.		
7. The convoy crosses the SP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP-crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.		
* 8. The convoy commander provides the convoy information to higher HQ. a. Reported the SP-crossing time. b. Reported the checkpoints clearance, when crossed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Pointed out the data that conflicted with maps. d. Employed the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP-crossing time. 9. The convoy maintains march discipline. a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed checkpoints as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts. 10. The company conducts a scheduled halt. a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained the prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved the vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified times. 11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt. a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported resumption of the march to higher HQ. 12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared the vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained the prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night-vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye-protection goggles. f. Employed ground guides during poor visibility periods. 13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles. d. Reported vehicle status to the convoy commander. 14. The convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Employed close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic-control directions. d. Employed direction guides at critical intersections. 15. The convoy crosses the RP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Establish Unit Defense (07-3-0219.05-T01A)
(FM 7-8) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) with a mission to occupy part of a larger unit's defensive sector, or is isolated and must provide its own security or defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The element may be opposed by as much as a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element completes all preparations for the defense not later than the time specified in the order. Digital units will report their location, and send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means to provide a friendly-unit template of the location. The enemy does not surprise the platoon. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader performs a leader's reconnaissance of the tentative defensive position. a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy, mines, and booby traps. b. Established local security. c. Surveyed the area for nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. d. Designated sectors and general locations for the operations, vehicles, and automatic and antiarmor weapons, based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). NOTE: At night, the designation of positions must be more exact. Leaders may elect to reconnoiter the area first, position the observation posts (OPs), and then have the guides bring the other members into position.		
2. The designated security or operation team moves to assigned positions. a. Emplaced the M8A1 chemical alarm system, if assigned, within 5 minutes of occupying the OP. b. Positioned the OP within range of the supporting small-arms fire. c. Provided cover and concealment for the OP personnel. d. Designated the covered and concealed routes to and from the OP. e. Established communications from the operations to the unit's command post (CP). The primary means should be wire, supplemented by messenger and radio. f. Disseminated the locations of all friendly personnel in the sector.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The platoon leader and the platoon forward observer (FO) designate targets to support the OP. a. Identified the target reference points (TRPs). b. Included the OP targets within the fire plan. 4. The OP team provides early warning. a. Provided continuous early warning out to a range that warned of enemy observation, direct fire, or assault on the main body. b. Detected all enemy activity within the vicinity of the unit's position. c. Adjusted illumination or high-explosive (HE) rounds on enemy targets. d. Emplaced expedient early-warning devices before dark, if possible. e. Demonstrated the correct use of the current challenge and password. f. Alternated the OP sites when required, due to the changing visibility or enemy activity. * 5. The platoon leader designates the primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions for key weapons or vehicles, where applicable, while emplacing the rest of the platoon. a. Positioned the machine guns to obtain grazing fire along the most likely dismounted avenue of approach (AA). b. Positioned the antiarmor weapons to cover the likely armor AA or the assigned engagement area (EA). c. Ensured that the positions were mutually supported along armor and dismounted infantry AAs. d. Positioned the M203 grenade launchers, if assigned, to cover dead space in the terrain outside the hand grenade range. * 6. The leaders place fighting positions to engage targets in designated sectors of fire, covering the most dangerous AAs first. a. Determined the sector of fire based on the type of weapon and the weapon's range. b. Assigned all personnel to a fighting position. * 7. The platoon leader coordinates or contacts adjacent units. a. Established boundary responsibilities. b. Discovered and eliminated any gaps in the defensive sector. c. Ensured that the observation and fires overlapped. 8. The platoon occupies defensive positions. NOTE: The leader establishes task priorities. Normally these are in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), but can be modified as needed (based on METT-TC considerations) by the platoon leader or the company commander. a. Occupied the assigned positions, physically. b. Reconnoitered physically in front of each position to become familiar with the terrain, to locate dead space, and to view the terrain from the enemy's perspective. c. Prepared and forwarded the crew-served weapons range cards to the squad leader within 15 minutes of positioning. d. Installed the aiming stakes. e. Cleared the fields of fire. f. Emplaced the obstacles according to the company's obstacle plan. g. Dug fighting positions to armpit depth with 18 inches of parapet. h. Constructed overhead cover for the fighting position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Camouflaged the positions and vehicles from aerial and ground observation. Ensured that the fighting positions could not be detected from a distance of more than 35 meters from the front of the position. j. Stockpiled ammunition, food, and water. k. Constructed alternate and supplementary positions. l. Ensured that all platoon members knew the platoon CP location.		
* 9. The platoon leader with the fire support team (FIST) or FO, if applicable, plans for the employment of indirect fires. a. Planned the fires along the enemy AAs. b. Planned the fires at known or likely enemy positions. c. Planned the final protective fires (FPF), if allocated. d. Registered and adjusted the TRPs, if available and the situation permitted.		
10. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) establishes communications. a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available. b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communications with operations, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support. c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications were operational. d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.		
*11. The squad leader prepares a sector sketch. a. Identified the main terrain features and the range to them. b. Identified the location of the squad's fighting positions. c. Indicated the primary and secondary sectors of fire for each position. d. Identified the type of weapon and fire control measures (FPF, principle direction of fire [PDF], and final protective line [FPL]) for each position. e. Identified the squad leader's position and the location of the OPs. f. Marked dead space on the sketch. g. Identified the location of the obstacles. h. Indicated the direction of north. i. Forwarded a copy of the sector sketch to the platoon leader within 30 minutes of being assigned a sector.		
*12. The platoon leader prepares a platoon sector sketch. a. Indicated the platoon sector or the EA. b. Denoted the primary, alternate, and supplementary squad positions and the sectors of fire. c. Indicated the location of the vehicles, antiarmor and automatic weapons' positions with the primary sectors of fire, the FPL or the PDF for the primary vehicle weapons system, automatic weapons, and the TRPs. d. Identified the location of the OPs and the patrol routes, if any had been planned. e. Outlined the maximum engagement lines for the primary weapon systems. f. Identified the location of indirect-fire targets and FPFs, if any had been allocated. g. Indicated the direction of north. h. Illustrated the unit identification, up to the company level. i. Indicated the date-time group. j. Identified the position of the platoon CP. k. Forwarded a copy of the platoon sector sketch to the company commander within 1 hour of assigning squad leaders sectors.		
13. The platoon continues to improve defensive positions. a. Improved according to the SOP work priorities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Upgraded as directed by higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-1910.11-1001	Camouflage Self, Individual Equipment, and Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3301.01-0013	Defend a Squad/Platoon Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3302.01-0003	Conduct a Reconnaissance	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-325-4407	EMPLOY HAND GRENADES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4425	EMPLOY AN M18A1 CLAYMORE MINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]) and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders. a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission. b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission. c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued. d. Addressed items not covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.		
* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order. a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions. b. Identified the route, SP, RP, critical points, and other control points. c. Provided the organization for movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units. d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air-guard coverage for the entire element. e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact. NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; air attack; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires. f. Provided the soldiers with load guides. g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.		
3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items. a. Inspected the personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Completed a communications check using digital and frequency modulated (FM) radios to report the element's readiness to move. 4. The element conducts the road movement. a. Crossed the SP at the designated time. b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the rate of march specified in the order or the unit's SOP. c. Followed the prescribed route. 5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement. a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards. b. Oriented as directed, to establish local security. 6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact. a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). b. Reported and reacted according to the unit's SOP using the DRS. 7. The unit halts. a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit's SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene. b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security. c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal (MSRT). d. Positioned the vehicles in a herringbone formation. e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security. f. Checked the condition of the personnel and equipment. g. Coordinated with adjacent unit. h. Reported status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT. 8. The leader controls the unit. a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement. b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS. c. Used control measures from the order, modified as needed. 9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order. a. Met the quartering-party guide, if one was designated. b. Passed through the RP without halting. c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0037	Navigate While Mounted	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0039	Plan and Execute a Route Fire Support	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT
301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1363	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH OR WITHOUT TRAILER/SEMITRAILER IN BLACKOUT CONDITIONS	STP 21-1-SMCT
551-721-1408	IMPLEMENT DEFENSIVE PROCEDURES WHEN UNDER ENEMY ATTACK OR AMBUSH IN A TRUCK CONVOY	STP 21-1-SMCT
O4-3303.02-0040	Navigate with a Compass and Map	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Defend a Battle Position (07-3-4129.05-T01A)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate that small opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The elements in the main defensive positions are not surprised by the OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units, forcing enemy withdrawal. Digital units will report and update situational awareness (SA) settings according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and submit reports using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The observation posts (OPs) detect and correctly identify the enemy. a. Reported enemy activity before the main body was engaged. b. Reported using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.		
2. The unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions. a. Actuated the alert plan according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Occupied the fighting positions within 1 minute of the initial warning.		
3. The unit reports enemy contact. a. Reported enemy contact using the SALUTE format to the company headquarters (HQ) within 1 minute of contact using the FM radio. b. Rendered additional situation reports (SITREPs) as the situation changed.		
4. The OPs return to the unit's position. a. Used covered and concealed routes back to the defensive position. b. Did not become decisively engaged.		
5. Indirect fire and/or close-air support is requested, if available and applicable. a. Initiated the call-for-fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition. b. Adjusted the fire within 30 seconds of round impact.		
6. The element reacts to the enemy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Executed the obstacle plan according to the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO); for example, detonated demolitions, detonated Claymore mines on order, or triggered lines. b. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered to do so. c. Controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy. d. Repositioned the vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed. e. Initiated the final protective fires (FPF), if required. f. Directed counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required. g. Defended the position until the enemy was repelled or when orders to disengage were received from higher HQ. h. Sustained no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.		
7. The element reacts to the indirect fire. a. Initiated the alert by any member yelling INCOMING. Also alerted the subordinate elements by other available communications means. b. Sought protection under the overhead cover of the fighting positions. If personnel were in the open, they moved to fighting positions or out of the area. c. Moved the vehicles out of the impact area to alternate positions, if applicable.		
* 8. The leaders reorganize the element. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Submitted the SITREP to the company commander. c. Cross-leveled the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties. d. Redistributed the ammunition. e. Reoccupied the operations, key weapons, and positions immediately. f. Treated and evacuated casualties as necessary. All first aid common tasks were reviewed. g. Submitted casualty reports. h. Updated the personnel roster. i. Processed the enemy prisoners of war (EPW) and captured materials.		
* 9. The leaders consolidate the element. a. Repositioned the operations. b. Reestablished communication with the elements. c. Repositioned the personnel. d. Reassigned the sectors of fire to cover all gaps. e. Implemented the sleep and alert plan.		
10. The unit continues the mission. a. Continued on orders from the company commander. b. Continued as soon as the tactical situation permitted.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7J)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to move cross-country mounted or dismounted. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The platoon retains its ability to move. Digital units send orders, reports, and text messages as required, according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) using frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility during the movement. a. Assigned all squads to an area of responsibility. b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual areas of responsibility. c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.		
* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement. a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation. b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.		
3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement. a. Formed one or two wedges, based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained. c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.		
* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used, based on METT-TC. a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely. b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely.		
5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique.		
a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.		
b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.		
c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.		
d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique.		
a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.		
NOTE: (DISMOUNTED) The lead squad uses traveling overwatch and the trailing squads use traveling.		
b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.		
c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique.		
a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.		
b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.		
* 8. The bounding squad moves.		
a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.		
b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.		
c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.		
d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).		
e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.		
f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound, to overwatch the succeeding bound.		
g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.		
h. Alerted the platoon leader and overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.		
9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.		
a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position.		
b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.		
c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.		
d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.		
e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected.		
f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.		
10. The platoon maintains security during the movement.		
a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning. *11. The leaders use control measures during the movement. a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement. 12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm and hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made. 13. The platoon leader knows the platoon location at all times. a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the platoon elements and the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements, and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Radiological or Chemical/Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) (FM 3-19)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. Digital units have performed functionality checks and all digital systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company's organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution. Digital units send and receive reports, overlay graphics, and text messaging information through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander receives and analyses the mission and identifies all unit tasks.		
* 2. The commander issues a warning order as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.		
* 3. The commander and the operations section makes a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance/survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air or indirect fire support, and medical support and coordinated its plan with units in the area of operations if necessary. c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.		
* 4. The commander orders units to start movement, if necessary.		
* 5. The commander reconnoiters the operations area and makes a map reconnaissance as a minimum.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The commander completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.		
* 7. The commander supervises preparations of the reconnaissance/survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.		
8. The company conducts a tactical road march or executes traveling movement to the reconnaissance/survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element-- a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required. b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that the marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.		
9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance/survey units' recovery operations.		
*10. The commander or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs returning reconnaissance/survey units and forwards acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.		
11. The radiological company leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation-exposure-status (RES) readings to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct a Thorough Decontamination Operation (03-2-C312.05-T01A)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is contaminated with a persistent chemical agent during combat operations. Time is available to conduct reconstitution, to include a thorough decontamination. A supporting smoke/decontamination (or decontamination) platoon is tasked to conduct the thorough decontamination mission. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The smoke/decontamination platoon sets up the detailed equipment decontamination site and removes all contamination from the equipment and vehicles. The contaminated unit sets up the detailed troop decontamination (with technical advice from the decontamination platoon) and processes all personnel. The responsible units properly close the site and report the location to higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Received input from subordinate leaders and/or staff. b. Established priorities of decontamination. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher HQ. The request should, as a minimum, include the-- a. Designation of the contaminated unit. b. Location of the contaminated unit. c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Earliest possible time the unit could move or begin decontamination. h. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth). 3. The contaminated unit's higher HQ chemical staff-- a. Issued a warning order to the supporting chemical unit. b. Coordinated the movement of the contaminated unit to the linkup point and the decontamination site. c. Coordinated with supporting elements (medical, engineer, air defense, military police, smoke support, and so forth).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The contaminated unit is responsible for providing security for the decontamination site. Security support must be coordinated before arriving at the linkup point. 4. The contaminated unit, decontamination platoon, and other supporting elements arrive at the linkup point. 5. The decontamination unit's leader briefs the site layout and the procedures. 6. The contaminated unit conducts predecontamination site or staging area activities. a. Segregated the contaminated vehicles and equipment from the uncontaminated ones, if possible. b. Dismounted the vehicles (except the drivers), ensuring that they-- (1) Removed all equipment from the tops of the vehicles. (2) Did not reenter the vehicles once they were exited (to prevent further contamination of the interior of the vehicles). c. Prepared vehicles for detailed equipment decontamination. (1) Used pioneer tools to remove all heavy mud and debris from the vehicle. (2) Removed and disposed of seat covers, canvas items, camouflage netting, and other materials which could absorb chemical contaminants. (3) Removed and disposed of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) covers as contaminated waste. d. Moved contaminated personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the detailed troop and equipment decontamination lines. 7. The designated personnel set up and maintain communications within the decontamination site and coordinate with the supported unit for additional communications support. * 8. The decontamination unit sets up detailed equipment decontamination site stations. a. Station 1. Initial wash. b. Station 2. Decontamination solution #2 (DS2) application. c. Station 3. Wait/interior decontamination. d. Station 4. Rinse. e. Station 5. Check. 9. The contaminated unit sets up detailed troop decontamination site stations. a. Station 1. Individual gear decontamination. b. Station 2. Overboot and hood decontamination. c. Station 3. Overgarment removal. d. Station 4. Overboot and glove removal. e. Station 5. Monitor. f. Station 6. Mask removal. g. Station 7. Mask decontamination point. h. Station 8. Reissue point. NOTE: The decontamination unit's leader must establish a route to move vehicle operators from Station 3 of the detailed equipment decontamination site to the detailed troop decontamination site. 10. The decontamination unit's leader (in conjunction with the leader or control cell from the contaminated unit) supervises an overall thorough decontamination site operation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The decontamination unit processes vehicles and equipment through the detailed equipment decontamination stations. a. Ensured that the contaminated unit provided guides to control vehicle traffic through the site. b. Ensured that the drivers moved the vehicles and equipment through the stations. c. Ensured that the assistant drivers who had processed through the detailed troop decontamination stations replaced the primary drivers at Station 3, once interior decontamination was completed. d. Ensured that the primary drivers proceeded to the detailed troop decontamination site to process through the stations. e. Ensured that the soldiers from the detailed troop decontamination site and the vehicles and equipment from the detailed equipment decontamination site reunited and moved to the reconstitution area. 12. The contaminated unit processes personnel through the detailed troop decontamination stations. 13. The decontamination unit's soldiers close the detailed equipment decontamination site. a. Station 1. (1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE], hoses, nozzles, and so forth). (2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary. (3) Drained water from the blivets or fabric tanks. (4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles. (5) Spread a can of super tropical bleach (STB) in each sump and covered the sumps. (6) Marked the sumps. b. Station 2 (for chemical/biological only). (1) Applied DS2 to PDDE, mops, handles, decontamination apparatus, and containers. (2) Discarded mop heads, brushes, and the station sign in the Station 4 sump and then pulled the PDDE forward and washed the entire application point. (3) Loaded unused decontaminants on the vehicles. (4) Marked the area and moved all reusable equipment from Station 2 to Station 3. c. Station 3. (1) Inspected unused supplies for contamination; if uncontaminated, loaded on the vehicles. (2) Threw contaminated supplies in the Station 4 sump. d. Station 4. (1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station (PDDE, hoses, nozzles, and so forth). (2) Checked all equipment for contamination and decontaminated again, if necessary. (3) Drained the water from the blivets or fabric tanks. (4) Loaded equipment on the vehicles. (5) Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps (after the residue from Station 5 was placed in the sump). (6) Marked the sumps. e. Station 5.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Decontaminated all equipment used at the station. (2) Loaded all the reusable equipment on the vehicles. (3) Discarded unusable items in the Station 4 sump. 14. The decontamination unit moves to the troop decontamination site for decontamination. 15. The station operators clean up the detailed troop decontamination site. a. Placed all the used supplies from Station 7 in the Station 7 sump. b. Moved all usable equipment and supplies from all stations to Station 1. c. Discarded unusable supplies from Stations 5, 4, and 3 in the sump at Station 1. d. Decontaminated all supplies and equipment collected at Station 1. e. Emptied and rinsed the decontaminant containers from Station 1 in the sump at that station. f. Marked the area. g. Removed overgarments utilizing the MOPP-gear exchange technique. h. Disposed of used overgarments in the Station 1 sump. i. Moved all the equipment used to fill the sump upwind of the decontamination area. j. Decontaminated rubber gloves and moved all equipment from Station 1 upwind of the decontamination area. Kept this equipment separate from the equipment used to fill the sump. k. Spread a can of STB in each sump and covered the sumps. l. Marked the sumps. m. Submitted an NBC 4 report to higher HQ defining the areas of contamination resulting from the decontamination operation. *16. The contaminated unit conducts reconstitution activities. a. Coordinated with supported battalions for assessment and recovery teams. b. Coordinated and requested maintenance support. c. Coordinated and requested medical support. d. Coordinated and established logistical support for resupply activities.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	USE M256 OR M256A1 CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3010	SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission. Digital units send and receive reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC-defense equipment. a. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that NBC-detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.		
* 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). a. Ensured that soldiers could mask and hood within 15 seconds. b. Ensured that soldiers could assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes.		
* 3. Unit soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack. a. Set up and use collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.		
* 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration: (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration: (1) Was it day or night? (2) What were the current weather conditions (see chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were the weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.		
2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms and left wrists and to either their right or left ankles and to the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field-sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of position.		
3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.		
* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.		
* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP 4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical or biological attack. a. Put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. b. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.		
2. The soldiers take additional protective measures. a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing with detector kits. c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.		
3. The soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Conducted wipe down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray-down of equipment.		
* 4. The leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike-warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. Digital units send and receive orders and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike-warning message. a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by return message.		
* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed the actions as directed.		
3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding. b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. Digital units send reports, warnings, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit's leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.		
2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters.		
3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leaders prepare for the crossing. a. Directed individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn back the dose/turn back the dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked the instruments.		
2. The unit prepares for the crossing. a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, use sandbags on the vehicle's floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring.		
3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between the vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).		
4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties (if applicable). c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. Digital units report locations, and send and receive messages through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Used threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.		
2. The unit employs organic smoke-grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered a larger area than the unit's position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).		
3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition systems were effective in the smoke and used them. b. Requested target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.		
* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL); food; and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. The designated personnel monitor fallout. a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. a. Without warning-- (1) Closed eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept head and face down and helmet on. (4) Remained prone until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning-- (1) Identified the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters). (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times. (5) Protected eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.		
* 2. The leaders reorganize the unit. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 1 report to the higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area-damage-control plan as required. k. Extinguished all fires before they spread out of control. * 3. The leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational. 4. The soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. The soldiers improve cover (if applicable). a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, unit decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP-gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP 4. Digital units can send and receive reports and orders through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Received input from staff or subordinate leaders. b. Established priorities of decontamination.		
2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should, as a minimum, include the-- a. Designation of the contaminated unit. b. Location of the contaminated unit. c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit. d. Time the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (patient decontamination station, recovery assets, unit decontamination team, and so forth).		
* 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ. a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (company supply section, company/battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, decontamination squad/platoon, and so forth). c. Coordinated with supporting elements. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP-gear exchange. 4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides the following: a. Adequate overhead concealment. b. Good drainage. c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes). d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown. e. Area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle-washdown and MOPP-gear-exchange sites). 5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (company/battalion PDDE crew or decontamination unit). a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination unit. d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and selected decontamination sites. 6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site. a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site. 7. The units prepare for operational decontamination. a. Set up the decontamination site. (1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle-washdown site. (2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP-gear-exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle-washdown site. (3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. (1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. The contaminated unit provided personnel to do this if the crews did not dismount. (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered). (4) Moved vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle-washdown site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP-gear-exchange site. 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle-washdown site, ensuring that the-- a. Vehicle operators maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Vehicles were washed properly. (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Vehicles moved to the assembly area after vehicle washdown. d. Vehicle operators moved to the MOPP-gear-exchange site and conducted MOPP-gear exchange. 9. The contaminated unit conducts MOPP-gear exchange. a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with super tropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed the MOPP-gear-exchange participants on the procedures to be followed. c. Placed decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material). d. Exchanged the MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved soldiers to the assembly area after completing the MOPP-gear exchange. NOTES: 1. Ensured that the supporting units had the opportunity to use the MOPP-gear-exchange site before proceeding. 2. The supporting decontamination unit cleaned and marked the site and reported the area of contamination (using NBC 4 report) to higher HQ. 10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completion of the operational decontamination. 11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher HQ. a. Reported the completion and location of the decontamination site (vehicle-washdown and the MOPP-gear-exchange sites). b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazard was detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ). 12. The contaminated unit continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. a. Used a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) 5 (Chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval. 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the route of march or had strip maps. c. Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to the soldiers and the vehicles to provide warning of contamination. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible. 4. The unit exits the contaminated area. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties (if applicable). c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2004	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 4 REPORTS	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA	STP 21-24-SMCT
04-3303.01-0034	Navigate Using a Map and Compass	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3306.01-0003	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-0301)
(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air- and ground-surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Digital units have performed functionality checks of their digital systems and they are operational. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). Digital units update their position through either frequency modulated (FM) or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes. a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Ensured that the vehicle's track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot. 2. The operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes. a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by the enemy's ground or aerial fires. c. Obliterated vehicle tracks where they turned, concealing vehicle positions. 3. The element conceals vehicles and equipment. a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so that their shape blended with the surroundings. c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shape or the shadow of the vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows. g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Ensured that heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) were kept under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted. k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.		
* 4. The leaders enforce camouflage discipline. a. Ensured that the unit's activities did not change the area's appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking them with terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of the debris or spoil from the area.		
* 5. The leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-8952.00-9050	Employ Directed Energy and Laser Protective Measures	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
04-3303.02-0014	Prepare Platoon or Company Combat Orders	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-328-5301	INSPECT PERSONNEL/EQUIPMENT	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 71-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A convoy's main body is attacked by a squad- to platoon-size force. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage due to inadequate immediate-action measures. Digital units send reports, requests for fires, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The convoy commander prepares for combat operations. The convoy commander-- a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with the security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the move. Ensured that the convoy had 360-degree coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received a digital update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.		
2. The convoy prepares for combat operations. The convoy-- a. Loaded the vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. Air guards were present. b. Ensured that the weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition. c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all procedures.		
3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. The convoy-- a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at the identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Maneuvered the vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy. Moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the convoy commander.		
* 4. The convoy commander develops the situation. The convoy commander- a. Initiated the fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy's strength, composition, and disposition. The convoy commander evaluated the direction and the volume of the enemy fire, the confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.		
* 5. The convoy commander selects a course of action based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. The convoy commander-- a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy's flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.		
6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities).		
* 7. The convoy commander reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters.		
8. The unit reorganizes and resumes its convoy. The unit-- a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed the ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-4966.90-0010	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
052-194-3500	CONDUCT A PATROL	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
061-283-1002	LOCATE A TARGET BY GRID COORDINATES	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 21-24-SMCT
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES	STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	STP 21-24-SMCT
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Platoon) (05-3-0001)
(FM 5-102) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element is supporting a task force (TF) and has received guidance from the TF commander. The element leader has completed an engineer estimate and developed the initial engineer plan to support the operation. The maneuver-commander's guidance identifies obstacles, responsibilities, obstacle belts, obstacle-restricted areas, scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) employment authority and concepts, priorities, and special instructions. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The obstacle plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. It outlines how and where the obstacles will be used to channelize or block the enemy force. The obstacle plan data will be input into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and supporting systems to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader obtains and considers all available information. The information includes-- a. The constraints and restraints received from higher headquarters (HQ). b. The TF tactical plans. c. The initial analysis developed as part of the engineer estimate process.		
* 2. The platoon leader develops an initial plan. The plan includes the-- a. Obstacles directed by higher HQ. b. Obstacles directed by the TF commander. c. Obstacle belts in the area of operations (AO). d. Obstacle-restricted areas. e. Scatterable-mine employment concept (identified by the type of scatterable mine system). f. Scatterable-mine employment authority (based on the type of system and the self-destruct time). g. Priority of the distribution of assets. (1) Class IV. (2) Class V (engineer). (3) Other obstacle assets under the maneuver element or engineer control, to include the units from the higher echelons. (4) Scatterable-mine allocation, by sortie, for air-delivered scatterable mines (Gator) and the air Multiple-Delivery Mine System (Volcano); the number of rounds for the Area Denial Artillery Munitions (ADAM) or the Remote Antiarmor Mine System (RAAMS); the number of mines or reloads for the Ground-Emplaced Mine-Scattering System (GEMSS) or the GEMSS auxiliary dispenser, M138 (Flipper) and the Volcano; and the number of dispensers for a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS). h. Authority to execute a mission and the special instructions for reserved demolitions or obstacles. i. Lanes and the routes key to the maneuver element or the logistics plan and the instructions for their closure.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The initial plan contains tentative information. While directive in nature, the specifics of the plan are modified based on the tactical plans of the subordinate maneuver elements. * 3. The platoon leader integrates the initial obstacle plan into the tactical plan. a. Integrated only those items key to the maneuver plan. b. Allowed for maximum flexibility. The subordinate maneuver commanders determined the type and location of obstacles, consistent with the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. c. Provided the plan to the maneuver commander and ensured that it was incorporated into the engineer annex. * 4. The platoon leader consolidates the subordinate unit's obstacle plans into the final (actual) obstacle plan, ensuring that the obstacle locations and types are coordinated with the maneuver- and fire-support plans. * 5. The platoon leader ensures that the final obstacle plan is complete. The plan should contain -- a. The location, type, and special characteristics of each obstacle (including directed obstacles) and all scatterable minefields with self-destruct times (except for MOPMS minefields). b. A timetable and an estimated completion time for obstacles not yet completed. c. The specific orders stating under what conditions and by whose authority the reserve obstacles are to be executed. d. The exact location of the routes and open lanes, according to the tactical and logistical plans, including those specified by higher HQ. e. Changes in the obstacle belts and other adjustments coordinated with the subordinate elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Explosive Techniques (05-3-0043.05-R01A)
(FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer element is supporting a combined-arms breaching operation as part of the breach force. The maneuver force commander has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The engineer element issued an operation order (OPORD) and completed preparations for the operation. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates, proofs, and marks the lanes through the obstacles to allow the assault force to seize the far-side objective. The element creates the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or observed indirect enemy fire for combat. The support force has provided suppression and obscuration. The breach force commander has secured the reduction site and has directed the engineer unit to reduce the obstacle. Digital units report (via frequency modulated [FM] or digital means) the locations of the breach site and any situational awareness (SA) information to enhance the mobility of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD to create a lane through an obstacle by explosive techniques. a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the element's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP) c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the creation of the lane. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the element's TSOP or SOP.		
* 2. The element leader determines the type, the location, and the dimensions of the obstacles from information provided by the maneuver force or the obstacle reconnaissance. a. Determined the obstacle (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, ice, ditch, or crater). b. Determined the obstacle's location and dimensions (at a minimum, the depth and frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, as time permitted, of the obstacle and the surrounding terrain, if the maneuver force did not provide sufficient details.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle based on the mission, enemy, troops, terrain, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) reports. The element-- a. Used the M58A3 mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC) or bangalore torpedoes for explosive obstacle breaching. NOTES: 1. Alternative course of action is to use direct or indirect weapons fire, however, this requires a high volume of fire and a large expenditure of ammunition. 2. The Antipersonnel Obstacle Breaching System (APOBS) clears a lane 0.6 meters by 45 meters. The APOBS is a dismounted, two-soldier carry (team), with a 25-meter standoff for antipersonnel (AP) mines and wire obstacles. b. Used the M1A1 or M1A2 bangalore torpedo to clear a 1- by 15-meter footpath. NOTE: The bangalore torpedo is manually emplaced and requires several soldiers to carry sections. The bangalore torpedo is not effective against pronged, double-impulsed, or pressure-resistant AP and surface laid antitank (AT) mines. * 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse-breach planning process during the element's military decision-making process. a. Determined the lane width. The standard widths were 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts and 4.5 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack. b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force). c. Determined the lane location based on the terrain, cover, concealment for the breach force, time, equipment available, and the maneuver scheme. 5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle. a. Created the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or observed indirect fire. No time standard was established if the obstacle was not covered by fire or if the element conducted breaching under covert conditions. b. Created a lane using a MICLIC. (1) Employed line charges in pairs, unless the limits of the obstacle were well known. Most of the enemy obstacles were deep enough to counter the length of the line charge. If the minefield was less than 100 meters and the edge was known, the standoff was 62 meters from the leading edge of the obstacle. (2) Positioned the line charge to allow for sufficient standoff to compensate for the length of the inert cable. This ensured that the line charge covered the suspected forward edge of the obstacle. If the obstacle was greater than 100 meters and the edge was unknown or if there was a disabled vehicle, the standoff was 100 meters from the vehicle. (3) Positioned the second line charge. Directed the alignment with the first line charge moving 25 meters into the trough of the previously fired charge to ensure an appropriate overlap. c. Created a lane using an APOBS. Positioned the line charge 25 meters from the obstacle to compensate for the length of the inert cable. This ensured that the line charge covered the suspected forward edge of the obstacle.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Created a lane using an M1A1or M1A2 bangalore torpedo. Ensured that all sections of the torpedo were locked into the coupler. e. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present. (1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area were warned and increased protection level to MOPP 4. (2) Equipped the breaching teams with a chemical agent detector kit or an automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators. (3) Ensured that the teams did not detonate the chemical mines in place. 6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets such as the mine-clearing roller (MCR), the M60 Panther, the miniflail, or by other means. The assault force and the follow-on forces should not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in a cleared lane. 7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element's TSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and the exit of the lanes. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane. a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes. b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. The markers were placed diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45-degree V shape. c. Placed entrance markers to the left and to the right of the lane. This reduced the lane's entrance point. The markers were spaced to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes). d. Placed left handrail markers. These markers were placed at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Handrail markers were placed at 15 meters for mounted lanes; 5 meters for dismounted lanes. NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, visibility, the lane length, and the lane path. e. Placed exit markers. These markers were placed to the left and right of the reduced lane's exit point, and they were spaced the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes; 5 meters for dismounted lanes). Note: Digital units, populate the FBCB2 screen with the breached lane location. Update overlays to provide situational awareness for manuever units. * 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and the supported maneuver-element HQ according to the element's TSOP. a. Reported the method or the material used for marking. b. Reported the location of the final-approach marker and the entrance and exit points.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Support the Attack on Fortified Positions (05-3-0044)
(FM 5-71-2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer platoon is supporting a maneuver company with an established command or support relationship. The maneuver company has a mission to attack a fortified position and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The attack occurs in daylight or darkness under all weather conditions. Protective obstacles require a dismounted assault. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon creates lanes through obstacles and destroys fighting positions with demolitions to maintain the momentum of the attack. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures with an emphasis on preparing for an assault of a fortified position. a. Identified personnel and equipment requirements to support the company's assault of a fortified position. NOTE: An engineer platoon normally requires augmentation with equipment (armored vehicle-launched bridge [AVLB] and mine-clearing line charge [MICLIC]) and personnel (up to two additional squads) to support the assault of a fortified position. b. Identified the required engineer Class V items and requested munitions through the maneuver unit. c. Task-organized the platoon and equipment to support both the breach force and the assault force, with priority to the breach force. d. Coordinated with the company commander to determine the platoon element's position in the combat formation. NOTE: The engineer platoon leader must be completely knowledgeable of the maneuver unit's field standing operating procedure (FSOP).		
2. The platoon conducts actions in the assembly area (AA). a. Conducts precombat checks (PCCs) with an emphasis on breaching equipment and demolition charges. b. Linked up with the breach force and assault force commanders. c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with the breach force and assault force elements.		
3. The platoon maneuvers with the company to the final assault position. Responds or takes appropriate action as directed by the maneuver company commander according to the maneuver unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).		
* 4. The platoon leader ensures that the platoon and equipment are positioned well forward and integrated into the breach and assault forces combat formations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The platoon, in coordination with the maneuver company, conducts an obstacle reconnaissance, if time permits.		
* 6. The platoon leader advises the maneuver company commander on the best location to bypass or breach the obstacles.		
7. The platoon supports the breach force by reducing the protective obstacles along the attack axis. a. Created lanes in enemy-protective obstacles. (1) The platoon leader controlled the MICLIC's placement and firing. (2) Created a minimum of one lane per assaulting infantry platoon. (3) Widened the assault lanes to enable the company's combat vehicles to move to the assault position, if the initial assault was dismounted. b. Marked the lanes through the obstacles according to the unit's TSOP.		
* 8. The platoon leader reports the location of the lanes and obstacles to the company headquarters according to the unit's TSOP.		
9. The platoon supports the assault force in clearing trench lines and knocking out bunkers and fortifications.		
10. The platoon conducts fire and movement with the maneuver element.		
11. The engineer squads join assaulting infantry platoons and destroy enemy fighting positions with demolitions, satchel charges, and pole charges.		
12. The platoon prepares to continue the mission, consolidating and reorganizing. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Established local security in coordination with the maneuver company. c. Provided engineer support (survivability and countermobility) to the maneuver unit's hasty defense. d. Redistributed ammunition and weapons. e. Treated and evacuated casualties. f. Searched, silenced, segregated, safeguarded, and sent prisoners to collection points when the situation permitted. g. Provided situation reports (SITREPs) to the company headquarters (HQ).		
13. The platoon leader, if required, controls the employment of the AVLB and Wolverine after seizing the enemy position. This enables combat vehicles to consolidate on the objective or to allow logistical support to be brought forward.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Create a Lane Through an Obstacle by Manual Techniques (05-3-0047.05-R01A)
(FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-250)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer element is supporting a combined-arms breaching operation. The element is directed to breach an obstacle other than a minefield. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The maneuver force commander designates support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates and marks lanes through the obstacles to maintain the momentum of the tactical operation. The element creates the lanes if the obstacle is covered by direct fire or if it has observed indirect enemy fire. Digital units report the locations of the breach lanes by using frequency modulated (FM) means, the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to create a lane through an obstacle by using manual techniques. a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the element's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and the requirements to create a lane through an obstacle d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the element's TSOP or SOP.		
2. The element leader determines the type, the location, and the dimensions of the obstacle from information provided by the maneuver force or an obstacle reconnaissance. a. Determined the obstacle (log, minefield, wire, rubble, snow, icing, ditches, or craters). b. Determined the obstacle's location and dimensions (as a minimum, the depth and frontage). c. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, if time permitted, of the obstacle and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide sufficient details.		
* 3. The element leader, in coordination with the breach force and maneuver commander, selects the best explosive techniques to reduce the obstacle based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) report information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used planks, hand-emplaced explosives, assault ladders, or other available engineer tools to reduce wire obstacles, minefields, escarpments, ditches, trench lines, and fortifications for manual obstacle breaching. Manual obstacle reduction is the slowest, most hazardous, and least preferred method.		
* 4. The element leader determines the lane requirements by conducting a reverse breach planning process during the element's military decision-making process.		
a. Determined the lane's width. Standard widths are 1 meter for a footpath for dismounts, 4 meters for an initial lane to pass vehicles and equipment conducting the attack.		
b. Determined the number of lanes required based on the size of the assault force and its scheme of maneuver (a minimum of one lane for a maneuver company and two lanes for a task force).		
c. Determined the lane's location based on the terrain, cover and concealment for the breach force, time and equipment available, and the maneuver scheme.		
5. The element creates the desired lane through the obstacle.		
a. Created the lanes within 10 minutes if the obstacle was covered by direct fire or if it observed indirect fire. No time standard is established if the obstacle is not covered by fire or if the element conducts breaching under covert conditions.		
b. Reduced log, steel beam post, and concrete obstacles with explosives or pioneer tools. Refer to Field Manual (FM) 5-34 and FM 5-250.		
c. Created a lane manually by using explosives through a surface-laid minefield.		
(1) Placed 1-pound, hand-emplaced charges directly next to the mines. Personnel may prime the demolitions and detonate the mines in place as they are detected or, to save time, may connect individual charges into a ring main or line main and simultaneously detonate.		
(2) Cleared suspected or detected trip wires with grapnels or clearly marked them so personnel placing the explosives did not activate them.		
d. Created a lane manually by using explosives (buried minefield).		
(1) Detected the mines by the visual method, probing, or electronic detectors. Marked the mines and destroyed them in place with explosives. If trip wires were encountered, they were cleared using grapnel hooks.		
e. The element reduces the minefield using a grappling hook.		
(1) Hand-thrown grappling hook. The thrower--		
(a) Used a 60-plus-meter light rope attached to the grapnel. The throw was usually no more than 25 meters.		
(b) Tossed the grapnel and sought cover before the grapnel and rope touched the ground in case their impact detonated a mine.		
(c) Moved backward, reaching the end of the excess rope or a covered position, then began to recover the grapnel by pulling the rope toward his position.		
(2) Weapon-launched grappling hook (WLGH). The grappler--		
(a) Used a 150-meter light rope attached to the grapnel and an M16A1 or M16A2 rifle to launch the grapnel hook.		
(b) Moved 60 meters (after the WLGH was launched) from the minefield into a prone position and began retrieving the grapnel hook.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The WLGH can be used only once, but it can be reused up to 20 times for training (blanks are used to fire the grapnel for training). f. Reduced wire obstacles with assault ladders and/or some form of wire cutters. g. Removed rubble with engineer equipment and/or explosives. h. Used special procedures when chemical mines were known or suspected to be present. (1) Ensured that all personnel operating within the downwind area implemented MOPP 4. (2) Equipped breaching teams with a chemical agent detector kit or automatic chemical alarm. Ensured that each team had trained and proficient operators. (3) Ensured that the teams did not detonate chemical mines in place. i. Reduced a tank ditch or other escarpments with pioneer tools, if part of a prebreach operation. 6. The element proofs the lane using mechanical assets such as the mine-clearing roller (MCR), the M60/ M1 Panther, the miniflail, or other means so that the assault force and follow-on forces do not sustain casualties or delays due to hazards in cleared lanes. 7. The element marks the cleared lane according to the element's TSOP. As a minimum, the element marks the entrance and the exit of the lanes. Friendly forces sustain no casualties from mine encounters in the reduced lane. a. Placed the final approach markers 200 meters from the entrance for the mounted lanes and 30 meters for the dismounted lanes. b. Placed the entrance funnel markers at intervals of 15 meters for mounted lanes and 5 meters for dismounted lanes. The markers were placed diagonally to the lane entrance and formed a 45-degree V shape. c. Placed entrance markers to the left and to the right of the lane. This reduced the lane's entrance point. The markers were spaced to the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes and 1 meter for dismounted lanes). d. Placed left handrail markers. These markers were placed at the left limit of the lane, along the entire path. Handrail markers were placed at 15 meters for mounted lanes; 5 meters for dismounted lanes. NOTE: Commanders may have to modify the intervals based on the terrain, visibility, the lane length, and the lane path. e. Placed exit markers. These markers were placed to the left and right of the reduced lane's exit point, and they were spaced the width of the lane (4.5 meters for mounted lanes; 5 meters for dismounted lanes). NOTE: Digital units populate the FBCB2 screen with the location of the breached location, update overlays to provide situational awareness for manuever units * 8. The element leader reports to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ) and the supported maneuver element HQ according to the element's TSOP. a. Reported the location of the final approach marker and entrance and exit points. b. Reported the method or material used for marking.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The enemy has captured opposing forces' (OPFOR) soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR surrenders the documents and the equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of the documents and the equipment. 2. Destroys the documents and the equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from the equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of the enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (US).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-0111)
(FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element is emplacing a minefield in support of a maneuver unit. The maneuver commander has determined the location, the type, and the composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The maneuver unit will provide the security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a tactical minefield (tied to existing or reinforced obstacles) to block, canalize, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. The camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. Digital units submit reports and locations of obstacles via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit's tactical standard operating procedure (TSOP) and applicable Standardization Agreements (STANAGs). Appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms are completed and submitted according to the applicable STANAG. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives fragmentory order FRAGO / operations order OPORD to emplace a VOLCANO minefield and conducts troop-leading procedures.		
* 2. The element leader issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to the platoon (includes the task, the day or night procedures, the observation posts [OPs], and the time requirements).		
* 3. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location. a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire. b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps. d. Selected the movement routes. e. Established local security.		
* 4. The element leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements and arranges for the mines to be drawn. a. Calculated the number of mines. b. Calculated the number of regular strips (if a standard-pattern minefield). c. Calculated the number of AHDs. d. Determined the strip cluster composition (if a standard-pattern minefield). e. Calculated the number of man-hours to install the minefield. f. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material. g. Calculated the number of trips necessary to transport the mines. h. Calculated the amount of engineer tape (if a standard-pattern minefield).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element leader calculated the number of mines and the amount of marking material needed for a scatterable minefield.		
* 6. The element leader reports, by secure means, to higher headquarters (HQ) the intention to lay mines. The report includes the tactical purpose; the number, the type, and the location of the mines; the type of minefield; if the mines are surface-laid or buried; if AHDs are used; the locations of the lanes or the gaps; and the proposed start and completion times.		
* 7. The element leader organizes the platoon to emplace the minefield. a. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a standard-pattern minefield, to include a-- (1) Siting party, consisting of one noncommissioned officer (NCO) and three enlisted members (EMs). (2) Laying party (three parties), consisting of one NCO and six to eight EMs per party. (3) Recording party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs. (4) Marking party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs. NOTE: The personnel breakdown depends on the number of personnel available at the time of the mission. b. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a scatterable minefield, to include-- (1) A siting party. (2) A loading party. (3) An emplacement party. (4) A marking party. c. Organized the personnel into parties to emplace a row minefield, to include-- (1) Personnel at the mine pickup point. (2) A squad mine-laying party. (3) A siting party. NOTE: The size of the parties is determined by the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).		
* 8. The element leader assembles the equipment and materials to emplace the minefield. a. Ensured that the equipment and materials included a map, a lensatic compass, minefield record forms, stakes or pickets, sledge hammers, engineer tape on reels, nails, barb wire on reels, marking signs, lane signs, wire cutters, gauntlets, metric tape, picks, shovels, and sandbags. NOTE: The quantity of required equipment and materials will vary depending on the size of the minefield and the number of personnel working. b. Ensured that the equipment for night operations included a hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS) and chemical lights to mark the lanes and the end points of the rows. NOTE: The platoon must assume that they are being observed by the enemy and maintain noise and light discipline.		
* 9. The element leader submits a report to the higher HQ stating that the unit has initiated mine emplacement. The report includes the time, the location, and the target number.		
10. The platoon personnel establish a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield. a. Selected a level site with adequate access for vehicles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Decided whether to keep the mines in trailers (mobile mine dumps). c. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart. 11. The platoon personnel emplace the minefield. a. Emplaced a standard-pattern minefield. (1) The marking party and the siting party performed operations. (a) The element leader designated a landmark at the rear of the minefield. (b) The element leader designated the start point of the minefield fence. (c) The marking party, while working in a counterclockwise direction, installed the fence pickets. (d) The siting party laid tape on the centerlines of each strip or row. (e) The element leader or the platoon sergeant designated the lanes. (f) The siting party laid tape for the lanes. (g) The siting party augmented the other parties. (2) The recording party conducted operations while the irregular outer edge (IOE) was taped. (a) The officer in charge (OIC) designated two landmarks. (b) The NCO and the marking party began from one landmark and recorded the azimuths and the distances to the strips and the clusters. (c) The NCO completed DA Form 1355. (d) The element leader reviewed DA Form 1355 for correctness and ensured that the form was classified SECRET or NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET. (e) The element leader signed the completed DA Form 1355. (f) The element leader submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to higher HQ as soon as possible. The element leader retained a copy of the completed DA Form 1355. (3) The laying party performed laying-party operations. (a) Established a mine dump upon arrival. (b) Uncrated and stacked the antitank (AT) mines. (c) Removed the lids on the crates containing the remaining mines. (d) Placed the fuses and detonators in separate boxes. NOTE: Do not mix the fuse types. (e) Hauled the base mines to the minefield site. (4) The NCO walked each lettered strip and designated the placement of each base mine (6 meters apart). (5) The laying party followed the NCO and placed the mines as directed, then returned to the mine dump to obtain more mines. (6) The fusing personnel inserted mine fuses, but did not arm the mines. (7) The NCO designated the number and the type of antipersonnel (AP) mines to place next to the base mine of each cluster. (8) The NCO placed a spool of trip wire next to the mines to be trip-wire activated. (9) The NCO turned the mines to be equipped with AHDs to an upside-down position. (10) The mine-laying party dug holes for the mines, checked the positioning of the mines, placed the mines next to the hole, placed the soil in a sandbag, and left the mines in the cluster. (11) The mine-laying party anchored trip wires to nails or stakes and wrapped the loose ends around the fuses. (12) The fusing personnel began arming the mines after the digging had progressed at least 25 meters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(13) The fusing personnel placed the mines in the holes, attached the trip wires, and armed the camouflaged mines, beginning with the mines at the farthest point from the centerline and working back. (14) The fusing personnel removed the sandbags and placed them on the centerline of the strip. CAUTION: PERSONNEL NOT INVOLVED IN ARMING THE MINES MUST BE AT LEAST 25 METERS FROM THE FUSING PERSONNEL. (15) The fusing personnel left the clusters with AHDs unarmed until all clusters within 30 meters had been armed and all personnel had moved a safe distance. (16) The fusing personnel did not arm the mines that were located in the lanes until the lanes were closed. (17) The fusing personnel, upon the completion of arming a strip, gave their safety clips and pins to the NCO. (18) The NCO verified that all mines were fused and camouflaged. (19) The NCO checked the strip to ensure that the platoon had removed the sandbags, the tape, and any debris. (20) The platoon sergeant received the safety clips from the NCO and buried them 30 centimeters to the rear of the start-row strip markers. b. Emplaced the scatterable mines (the Modular-Pack Mine System [MOPMS], the wide-area munition [WAM], or the Multiple-Delivery Mine System [Volcano]). (1) The element leader designated the landmarks, the dimensions of the minefield, and the location of the minefield fence. (2) The element leader designated the traffic and the minefield lanes. (3) The laying party marked the row centerline, spacing at least 60 meters between the belts. (4) The platoon sergeant established a mine dump. (5) The loading party loaded the MOPMS, the WAM, or the Volcano and set the density, the self-destruct time, and the strip width. (6) The laying party drove to the first belt and began dispersing the mines. When crossing the minefield lanes, the crew stopped dispersing mines 5 meters inside the lane and again began dispersing mines 40-50 meters beyond the lane. The laying party ensured that no mines fell into the lanes. The crews continued loading and emplacing the mines until the belts were finished. (7) The marking party emplaced the minefield fence. (8) The element leader or the squad leader completed DA Form 1355 and forwarded it according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Emplaced a row minefield. (1) The element leader designated the landmarks, minefield dimensions, and minefield-fence locations. (2) The element leader designated the minefield lanes and at least three row centerlines. The centerlines had at least 8 meters between them. (3) The marking party marked the centerline. (4) The platoon sergeant established a mine dump. (5) The loading party loaded a vehicle with mines from the dump. The mines were fused but not armed. (6) The laying parties performed operations. (a) The NCO determined the mine spacing. NOTE: A 6-meter rope with a weight (sandbag) on the end may be towed by the laying vehicle to determine the mine spacing. This space will vary depending on the METT-TC.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) The driver followed the NCO or the row markers. (c) The mines were armed, handed to a layer, and carefully laid from the vehicle. The mines were not buried. (d) The arming party recovered the row markers. (7) The laying party, as time permitted, placed another three rows of mines at least 100 meters behind the first. (8) The laying party, as time permitted, buried the base mines and added a buried IOE strip, a row of AP mines, and AHDs. (9) The marking party installed the minefield fence. *12. The element leader completes DA Form 1355 and forwards it according to the unit's SOP. *13. The element leader sends a report of completion, usually an oral report, to the authorizing commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Emplace a Standard-Pattern Minefield (05-3-0112.05-R01A)
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operations order (OPORD) to emplace a standard-pattern minefield. The maneuver commander determines the location, type, and composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver unit will provide security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a standard-pattern minefield tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. The locations are accurate to within plus or minus 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The element completes the minefield within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The element submits Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to emplace a standard-pattern minefield. a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit's TSOP or SOP.		
* 2. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location. a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire. b. Ensured that the final location was tied to the existing or reinforcing obstacles. c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps. d. Selected the movement routes. e. Established local security. NOTE: For additional information on weapon ranges, refer to Field Manual (FM) 20-32.		
* 3. The element leader or subordinate element leaders calculate the man-hours and logistical requirements and arrange for mines to be drawn. a. Calculated the number of mines. b. Calculated the number of regular strips. c. Calculated the number of AHDs. d. Determined the mine-cluster composition. e. Calculated the number of man-hours required to install the minefield. f. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material. g. Calculated the number of trips required to transport the mines.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Calculated the amount of textile cotton tape (white engineer tape). * 4. The element leader reports, by secure means, to higher headquarters (HQ) or the supported maneuver unit's headquarters, the intention to lay mines (if required). a. Stated the tactical purpose. b. Reported the number and types of mines. c. Reported the proposed locations of mines. d. Identified the minefield types. e. Identified if the mines would be surface-laid or buried. f. Identified if AHDs would be used. g. Identified the location and size of lanes or gaps. h. Reported the proposed start and completion times. * 5. The element leader or subordinate leaders organize the element to emplace the minefield. a. Organized the element into teams, to include-- (1) The siting party, consisting of one noncommissioned officer (NCO) and three enlisted members (EMs). (2) The laying parties (three parties), consisting of one NCO and six to eight EMs per party. (3) The recording party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs. (4) The mine-dump party, consisting of one NCO and element personnel not working as members of the other teams. (5) The marking party, consisting of one NCO and two EMs. NOTE: The breakdown in personnel depends on the number of personnel available at the time of the mission. * 6. The element leader or subordinate leaders supervise the assembly of the equipment and material to emplace the minefield during daylight or with limited visibility. NOTE: The quantity of equipment and material required may vary depending on the size of the minefield and the number of personnel working. The element must assume that the enemy is observing them and maintain noise and light discipline. * 7. The element leader reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit's HQ that the element has initiated the emplacement. The report includes the time, the location, and the target number. 8. The element establishes a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield. a. Selected a level site with adequate access for vehicles. b. Decided whether to keep the mines in trailers (mobile mine dumps), if desired c. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart and 50 meters behind the minefield mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). NOTE: The battlefield situation and resupply techniques determine whether a mine dump is used. 9. The element, working in its designated parties, emplaces a standard-pattern minefield within plus or minus 10 percent of the allocated time. a. Performed marking-party operations. (1) The element leader designated two landmarks at the rear of the minefield. (2) The element leader designated the start point of the minefield fence. (3) The marking party installed the fence pickets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Performed siting-party operations. (1) The siting party laid tape on the centerlines of each strip or row. (2) The element leader or subordinate leader designated the lanes. (3) The siting party laid the tape for the lanes. (4) The siting party augmented the other parties. c. Performed recording-party operations while the irregular outer edge (IOE) was taped. Beginning at a landmark, the recording party NCO and marking party recorded the azimuths and the distances to the strips and the clusters. d. Performed laying-party operations. The laying party-- (1) Established a mine-dump area upon arrival. (2) Uncrated and stacked the antitank mines. (3) Removed the lids on the crates containing the remaining mines. (4) Placed the fuses and detonators in separate boxes. NOTE: Do not mix the fuse types. (5) Hauled the base mines to the minefield site. (6) Followed the laying-party NCO as he walked each lettered strip and designated the placement of each base mine (6 meters apart). (7) Placed mines as directed, returning to the mine dump to obtain more mines as needed. (8) Inserted the mine fuses, but did not arm the mines (fusing personnel). NOTE: Korea only. The NCO designates the number and the type of antipersonnel mines to place next to the base mine of each cluster. (9) The NCO placed a spool of trip wire next to the mines to be trip wire activated. (10) The NCO turned the mines to be equipped with AHDs to an upside-down position. (11) Dug holes for the mines, checked the size and the positioning of the mine in the hole, placed the mines next to the hole, placed the soil in a sandbag, and left the mine in the cluster. (12) Anchored the trip wires to nails or stakes and wrapped the loose ends around the fuses. (13) Fusing personnel began to arm the mines once the digging had progressed at least 25 meters. (14) Fusing personnel placed the mines in the holes, attached trip wires to them, and armed and camouflaged them, beginning with the mines the farthest point from the centerline and working back. (15) Fusing personnel removed sandbags and placed them on the centerline of the strip. CAUTION: PERSONNEL NOT INVOLVED IN ARMING MINES MUST BE AT LEAST 25 METERS FROM THE FUSING PERSONNEL. (16) Fusing personnel left the clusters with the AHDs unarmed until all clusters within 30 meters had been armed and all personnel had moved a safe distance. (17) Fusing personnel did not arm the mines that were located in the lanes until the lanes were closed. (18) Fusing personnel, upon completion of arming a strip, gave their safety clips and pins to the NCO. (19) The NCO verified that all of the mines had been armed and camouflaged. (20) The NCO checked the strip to ensure that the element had cleared the minefield of sandbags, tape, and other debris. e. The element leader or subordinate leader received the safety clips from the laying-party NCO and buried them 30 centimeters to the rear of the start-row strip markers.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*10. The element leader completes DA Form 1355 and submits copies according to the unit's TSOP or SOP. a. Reviewed the completed DA Form 1355 for correctness, ensured that the form was marked with the correct classification, signed the form, and forwarded it to the authorizing commander. b. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the overwatching unit and higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit's headquarters as soon as possible. c. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the proper national territorial authority and the unit's central-control cell (for mine clearance information). *11. The element leader sends a report of completion, usually an oral report, to the authorizing commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP ARTEP 5-463-10-MTP ARTEP 5-463-12-MTP
05-3-1018.05-R01D	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct Self-Extraction from Remotely Delivered Mines (05-3-0113)
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is supporting a construction mission in a tactical environment. Remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. They have communications, digitally or frequency modulated (FM), to the task force (TF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) via FM or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		
2. The command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert the units. The CP personnel-- a. Notified all of the elements. If the element was-- (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Not able to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared the mines from the positions through detonation and departed as soon as it was feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation. The CP personnel included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered). * 3. The vehicle commanders check the immediate area. The element personnel remove the mines and the trip wires from the vehicles. The vehicle commanders-- a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires. b. Removed the trip wires from the soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device. NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel. c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the remainder of the unit was out of the minefield. * 4. The element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes. 5. The element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. The element personnel-- a. Used visual means to locate mines and mark vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The element personnel marked lanes according to the tactical situation and threat; however, the marked areas also allowed for personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles. b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes, using a grapnel hook or other means, as directed by the company commander. The element personnel detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage. * 6. The vehicle commanders direct the personnel ground-guiding the vehicles out of the minefield. The vehicle commanders-- a. Ensured that the individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command. b. Placed any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire onto the vehicles. c. Ensured that the individual crews ground-guided the vehicles to a designated lane or allowed the vehicles to exit the minefield on their own. 7. The company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. The company personnel-- a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes. b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove the vehicles or equipment from the minefield. c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred. d. Placed sandbags near the mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage. e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance. f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground. 8. If the position cannot be evacuated, the element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow for mission accomplishment. The element personnel-- a. Cleared the communication lanes between the positions. b. Marked the communication lanes between the positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from detonation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Defend Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting a minesweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) have a minefield placed in the enemy's path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minesweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minesweeping operations. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach, or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Support Breaching Operations (05-3-0114)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer company is performing continuous tactical operations in the darkness and the daylight, under all weather conditions. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that has an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. Digital units have performed functionality checks of digital systems and they are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company creates lanes through obstacles, as directed by the TF commander, to maintain the momentum of the attack. Friendly forces sustain no casualties while using the marked lanes. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures, with emphasis on preparing for breaching operations. a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed and task-organized the platoons to breach the obstacles in support of the attack. b. Rehearsed the mission with the company leaders. c. Ensured that each element understood their mission. d. Ensured that the equipment was checked for serviceability and that the company had the items specified in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) as well as those items required for the specific mission. NOTE: To support a deliberate attack, an engineer company may require augmentation with the following additional equipment and personnel: an armored vehicle-launched bridge (AVLB), mine-clearing line charges (MICLICs), and up to two additional platoons of personnel. e. Identified engineer required Class V munitions. Requested the munitions through the maneuver unit. f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach and assault forces. Priority went to the breach force. g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in combat formation. NOTE: The engineer-company's leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit's TSOP.		
2. The company conducts actions in the assembly area (AA). a. Performed precombat checks (PCCs) with special emphasis on the breaching equipment. b. Established a linkup with the breach- and assault-force commanders.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Performed detailed rehearsals with the breach- and assault-force elements.		
3. The company moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacles.		
4. The company, as directed by the maneuver commander, takes action according to the maneuver-unit's TSOP.		
* 5. The company commander positions the subordinate elements well forward and integrates them into the breach- and assault-force combat formations. The commander anticipates the locations or events where engineer support is essential.		
* 6. The company commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).		
7. The company supports the breaching operation.		
* 8. The company commander directs engineer platoons to conduct an enemy-obstacle reconnaissance.		
* 9. The company commander advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or breach the obstacle(s).		
10. The company supports breach and assault forces. Priority goes to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.		
*11. The company commander directs the engineer elements supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The elements are prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks. a. Ensured a minimum of one lane per assaulting element or two lanes per TF. b. Created a lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel or equipment was exposed to direct or observed indirect fire. NOTE: The 10-minute time limit refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for the personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle. c. Conducted breaching operations by stealth or at a location where the unit was not under enemy fire. No time standard was established.		
*12. The company commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.		
13. The company marks lanes according to the unit's TSOP.		
*14. The company commander reports lane location according to the unit's TSOP.		
15. The company prepares to continue the mission.		
*16. The company commander reports lane or obstacle locations to the higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit's TSOP.		
17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle hand-off.		
*18. The company commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or obstacle to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit. The lane or obstacle is expediently marked and the marking method is explained to the follow-on engineer unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
19. The company supports the maneuver unit's assault on the objective.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-226-1013	Retrieve the Armored Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB): Operator	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0115.05-R01A)
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a field environment, an order has been given to emplace a hasty protective row minefield. Copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R, M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines were issued. The time to conduct a reconnaissance of the area is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fires. The AT mines are placed in order to affect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). The AP mines are intermixed with the AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send and receive reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives an OPORD / FRAGO to lay a hasty protective minefield. The element leader reports the intention to lay a hasty protective row minefield to higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: The intention of laying the minefield is reported to higher headquarters (HQ). This is the first of four reports, intention to lay, initiation to lay, status and completion, all must be sent in a secure manner. The brigade commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to the battalion or company commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the operation order (OPORD), which is passed to the platoon level. a. The element leader determined the location of the minefield. b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid. c. Determined whether the mines would be or buried. d. Determined the proposed date and time for starting and completing. e. Element leader conducts pre combat checks (PCC) and pre combat inspections (PCI's) 2. The element leader established security. 3. The TC maneuvers the vehicle using a covered and concealed route to the selected minefield location. NOTE: In most situations the squad works together to emplace the minefield. For larger minefields the coordination for support from other combat arms must be made to supplement manpower. 4. The TC and the driver move their vehicle to an over watch position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Used cover and concealment. b. Moved into a hull-down position, if possible. c. Covered likely enemy positions and approaches. * 5. The element leader and subordinate leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify: a. Overwatched likely enemy AAs. b. Enhanced key weapons systems. c. Covered dead space and ensured the minefield is covered by fire. d. Established an easily identifiable reference point (RP) between the minefield and the the unit position. e. Identified mine locations. * 6. The element leader and subordinate leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield. 7. Element leader breaks down personnel into four teams, Siting and recording party, marking party, mine dump party and laying party. * 8. The element leader reports the initiation of the minefield. a. Specified the start time of the minefield emplacement. b. Specified the exact location of the minefield. c. Specified the target number of the minefield. 9. The element leader directs the siting party to layout the minefield, reference points, land marks and row markers. Initiation report is submitted to higher head quarters. NOTE: The mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used. No booby traps or anti handling devices are used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP mines (AP mines are only used in Korea) is to place them no closer than 4 meters. There is no maximum distance; however, it should not pose any tactical impact to adjascent friendly units. a. Installed the mines. (1) Placed the row markers at the beginning and end of each row. The markers were labeled with the letter of the row, the number one for the beginning of the row and number two for the end of that lettered row. The minefield is laid from right to left NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects such as steel pickets that can be found with an AN/PSS-12 mine detector. (2) Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation. NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters for surface laid M15 mines and 7.6 meters for surface laid M19 mines. The distance from the row marker to the first mine in that row is the spacing used throughout that row. The spacing between rows should be no closer than 8 meters or 15 meters if anti personnel mines are used (3) Emplaced the rows outside of the hand grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons. b. Emplaced AT mines so that they would affect likely AAs. c. Emplaced AP mines so that they were intermixed with AT mines to deny the enemy dismounted AAs. (M18A1 AP mines will be command-detonated when NOT used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines will be used in Korea only.) (1) Buried M21or M15 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed. (2) Camouflaged the tilt rod with brush or tall grass, if time permitted. (3) Element leader submits a strip record to the officer in charge to record the data on the 1355-1R		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea mines only) up to the bottom of the release-pin ring leaving only the pressure prongs above ground. This provided the stability required for proper employment. *10. The element leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R. NOTE: All measurements will be recorded in meters on DA Form 1355-1-R. a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent reference point (RP) in front of his position. NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage. b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form. NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale. The distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield plus 10 meters and divided by four equals the scale. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R. c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on the form. NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an "A," while "B" and "C" are used for succeeding rows and so on. d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row: a number one for one end of the row and a number two for the other end. e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row. NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker and record it as "B1." Use "B1" if there are two rows, "C1" if there are three rows, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row. f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row, which would be "A1" in this case. g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker. NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from "A1" to the first mine to be recorded, then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block of DA Form 1355-1-R. h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to "B2" and from "B2" to "A2." i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark. NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield should it be abandoned or handed over to another unit. j. Completed the tabular information blocks by specifying the unit and the precise description of the RP, the kind and type of markers used to identify the rows, the map sheet number, the name, the signature of the officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), and the date and time. Described how the minefield was measured in the "remarks" block; for example, the minefield was paced out and paces were multiplied by 0.75. 11. The element arms the mines. NOTE: The minimum safe distance is observed while arming ensuring that 25 meters is maintained from other personnel and other rows being armed simultaneously. The minefield must be fenced on all sides if M18A1 AP mines are employed and the minefield will be in place for more than 72 hours. a. Worked from the enemy side or front of the minefield to the friendly side rear of the minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container. The pins clips and associated items are placed 30cm behind the row marker or the reference point and the location annotated on the 1355-1R c. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted. d. Recorded the items and their location in the "remarks" block on DA Form 1355-1-R. e. Informed the squad members of the location of DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, and safeties. *12. The element leader recovers mine safeties and shipping plugs. *13. The element leader reports the completion of laying the minefield. a. Reported to the authorizing commander, by using a secure means, that the minefield had been completed. b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander. Note: Digital units place the obstacle on the overlay and populate the system to allow friendly units to have situational awareness in the area of operations. *14. The element leader makes sure that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines. *15. The element leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and noncombatants from entering the mined area. NOTE: If AP mines are used (Korea only) in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides. *16. The element leader submits additional reports, in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP) or as necessary. Note: Digital units can send and receive reports via frequency modulated or through digital means. Graphics can be added to the FBCB2 for friendly units to have situational awareness. a. Submitted oral progress reports, during the emplacing process, concerning the amount of work completed. b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if responsibility for a minefield was altered.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0116)
(FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a field environment, an order has been received from your higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that your element emplaced within your assigned sector. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are rendered safe and are removed, or accounted for, without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all the mines are disarmed and removed. Digital units send and receive reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield. NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission. 2. The squad leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond. a. If necessary, the security force employed smoke on the far side to conceal mine removal. b. The security force remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared. 3. The squad leader determines the best method for removing the mines. a. If the minefield had been under constant observation from the time it was laid and had not been tampered with, the squad leader directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines. The squad leader used Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed. b. If the minefield had not been under constant observation and may have been tampered with, or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines, the squad leader used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed. 4. The squad leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and any other items that accompanied the emplaced mines. 5. The removal team locates "safeties" and removes the mines within the minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The removal team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to "B1" using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R; then the team moves from "B1" to the mine and removes the mine. If "B1" is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to "B2" using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth from "B2" to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at "A1," "B1," "A2," and "B2" are necessary because it's safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine. a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30 meters between removal personnel. Removal personnel did not run and only moved around in cleared areas. b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it. c. Checked the sides and bottoms of the mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found. NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise. d. Replaced all pins, clips, or other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground. e. If equipped, turned any arming dials to "safe" or "unarmed." f. If the mine had a screw-type fuze, removed the fuze and took it away from the mine. If the detonator was not built-in, the team took the fuze from the mine. g. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on "safe." (1) If the mine was put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it, he lifted it directly from the hole after rendering it "safe." (2) If the mine had not been kept in sight, attached a 60-meter long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole. h. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed. 6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability. 7. The squad leader confirms the "safety" of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R. NOTE: The squad leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all of the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, make sure it was caused by a land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery are generally elongated. 8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use. NOTE: This is honed only after the squad leader confirms each mine has been disarmed and safe. a. Repacked mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use. b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP. 9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use. 10. The squad leader submits a report of change to his higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared. NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and the maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The squad leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield (05-3-0119.05-R01A)
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield. The maneuver commander has determined the location, the type, and the composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver commander will provide the security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces a standardized tactical row minefield tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The element submits reports and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. The element completes the minefield within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield. a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) or the standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted a risk-management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit's TSOP or the SOP.		
* 2. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location. a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by fire. b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps. d. Selected movement routes. e. Established local security. NOTE: For additional information on weapons ranges refer to Field Manual (FM) 20-32.		
* 3. The element leader calculates logistical requirements needed for the standardized row minefield. a. Calculated for disrupted and fixed standardized row minefields. (1) Row "A" had-- (a) 42 full-width antitank (AT) mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart. (b) No turning points (c) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (2) Row "B" had--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Start and end markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A."		
(b) 42 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) Three or less turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(3) Row "C" had--		
(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A."		
(b) 42 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) No turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(4) Irregular outer edge (IOE) on a fix minefield had--		
(a) Three IOE short rows.		
(b) A separate IOE baseline.		
(c) An IOE baseline on the enemy side that was 15 meters from row "A."		
(d) Seven full-width AT mines on each IOE short row, which were placed 6 meters apart.		
(e) Buried mines.		
(f) The first IOE short row placed 48 meters from the IOE end marker, the second short row placed 84 meters from the first short row, and the third short row placed 84 meters from the second short row.		
b. Turned standardized row minefield.		
(1) Row "A" had--		
(a) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt rod) placed 6 meters apart.		
(b) No turning points		
(c) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(2) Row "B" had--		
(a) Start and end row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A."		
(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) Five or less turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(3) Row "C" had--		
(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A."		
(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) No turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(4) Row "D" had--		
(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "C."		
(b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) No turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(5) Row "E" had--		
(a) Start and end row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "D."		
(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) Five or less turning points.		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
(6) Row "F" had--		
(a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "D."		
(b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart.		
(c) No turning points		
(d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines.		
c. Block standardized row minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: A block minefield has an IOE (Korea Only: and antipersonnel [AP] mines) and has 20 percent AHDs in two of its rows of full-width mines. AHDs are placed in rows "B" and "C" for the best effect. (Korea Only: a block minefield also requires a density of 0.17 of M16 or M14 AP mines per linear meter of depth which is approximately 84 M16 or M14 mines.) (1) Row "A" had-- (a) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt rod) placed 6 meters apart. (b) No turning points. (c) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (2) Row "B" had-- (a) Start and end-row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "A." (b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart. (c) Five or less turning points. (d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (3) Row "C" had-- (a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "A." (b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart. (c) No turning points. (d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (4) Row "D" had-- (a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "C." (b) 84 full-width AT mines (tilt-rod) placed 6 meters apart. (c) No turning points. (d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (5) Row "E" had-- (a) Start and end-row markers emplaced 50 meters behind row "D." (b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart. (c) Five or less turning points. (d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (6) Row "F" had-- (a) Been emplaced 100 meters behind row "D." (b) 84 track-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart. (c) No turning points. (d) Surface-laid (staked) or buried mines. (7) IOE had-- (a) Six IOE short rows. (b) A separate IOE baseline. (c) Seven full-width AT mines placed 6 meters apart on each IOE short row. (d) Buried mines. (e) The first IOE short row placed 72 meters from the IOE end marker, and the five subsequent IOE short rows placed at 72-meter intervals on the baseline. (8) Korea Only: AP mines. (a) Placed two rows of full-width AT mines. (b) Placed in a cluster around AT mines. (c) Placed in front of every other AT mine (one per AT mine).		
* 4. The element leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements (if standard-row minefield designs are not used) and arranges for the mines to be drawn from supply. a. Calculated the number of mines. b. Calculated the number of rows (depending on the effect). c. Calculated the number of AHDs. d. Calculated the number of man-hours needed to install the minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material. f. Calculated the number of trips needed to transport the mines. * 5. The element leader reports, by secure means, to the higher headquarters (HQ) or supported maneuver unit HQ, the intention to lay mines (if required). a. Reported the tactical purpose. b. Reported the number and type of mines. c. Reported the intended locations. d. Reported the type of the minefield. e. Reported the mines that were to be surface-laid or buried. f. Reported that AHDs were used. g. Reported the location and the width of lanes and gaps. h. Reported the proposed start and completion times. * 6. To emplace the minefield, the element leader or the subordinate leaders organize the element into four parties: siting and recording, laying, marking, and mine dump. a. Organized the siting and recording party, which consisted of an element leader and two enlisted members (EM). b. Organized the laying party, which consisted of one subordinate leader and four EMs. Ensured that there were three separate teams of laying personnel and each team had a vehicle (if available). c. Organized the marking party, which consisted of one subordinate leader and was composed of element personnel who were not members of other teams. d. Organized the mine-dump party, which consisted of one subordinate leader and was composed of element personnel who were not members of other teams. NOTE: The personnel breakdown varies depending on the number of personnel available at the time of the mission. * 7. The element leader or the subordinate leaders supervise the assembly of all equipment and material to emplace the minefield during the daylight or with limited visibility. NOTE: The quantity of equipment and material required may vary depending on the size of the minefield and the number of personnel working. The element must assume the enemy is observing them and maintain noise and light discipline. * 8. The element leader reports to higher HQ or supported maneuver unit HQ that the element has initiated emplacement. The report includes the time, the location, and the target number. 9. The element establishes a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield. a. Selected a reasonably level site with adequate access for vehicles. b. Decided whether to keep the mines in trailers (mobile mine dump). c. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart and 50 meters behind the minefield. Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) was moved accordingly, as needed. NOTE: The battlefield situation and the resupply techniques will dictate if a mine dump is used or not. d. Uncrated and stacked the AT mines. e. Removed the lids on the remaining mine crates, but did not remove the additional mines from the crates. f. Placed the fuzes and the detonators in separate boxes. NOTE: Do not mix the fuze types.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*10. The siting and recording party performs operations. a. Selected landmark 1 and sited the left (or right) boundary fence and the start row markers. NOTE: All the start and end row markers are permanent markers. b. Recorded the distances and the azimuths used in preparing DA Form 1355. c. Proceeded across the IOE and established I1, I1E, I2, I2E, and so on until reaching the end. d. Proceeded down the right (or left) boundary fence and emplaced the A1start row marker. Proceeded from A1 to A2 then placed the intermediate markers, as needed, and ended with the end row marker at A2. e. Designated the minefield lanes and at least three rows. The rows should have at least 8 meters between them. NOTE: The rows with antipersonnel mines should have at least 15 meters between them (Korea only). f. Repeated procedure in task step 10d to emplace B1 to B2, C1 to C2, and so on until all of the required control measures were emplaced. g. Established landmark 2 and the left (or right) rear fence. 11. The marking party emplaces the fence post, the wire, and the marking signs. 12. The laying party performs operations. a. Assembled a guide for mine spacing. NOTE: For a guide use a rope with a weight (sandbag) on the end and tow it with the laying vehicle. The rope should be 4-10 meters long depending on the mine spacing to be used in the row. The element leader determines the spacing. b. Proceeded down the row in the vehicle following the shotgun/track commander (TC) or the intermediate row markers. c. Transferred the mines from the vehicle and carefully laid them on the ground. d. Fuzed the mines. NOTE: The mines can be fuzed while inside the vehicle or after they are laid on the ground. e. Armed the mines and recovered the row markers. NOTE: If the minefield is a buried minefield, bury the mines prior to arming them. 13. The marking party installs the minefield fence. 14. A subordinated leader completes a DA Form 1355 with the required information. *15. The element leader submits a minimum of four copies of a completed DA Form 1355 according to the unit's TSOP or the SOP. a. Reviewed the DA Form 1355 for correctness, ensured that the form was marked with the correct classification, and signed the form. NOTE: The DA Form 1355 should be marked with one of the following classifications: SECRET or NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET, SECRET- Republic of Korea, United States (ROKUS), or SAMPLE. b. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the overwatch unit and the higher HQ, or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible. c. Submitted a copy of the completed DA Form 1355 to the unit's central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority. *16. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually orally, to the authorizing commander and then immediately submits a completed DA Form 1355.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-1105	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M624 Fuze	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-1106	Remove an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine With the M624 Fuze	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-1107	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-1109	Install an M19 Antitank (AT) Mine	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-1117	Install an M21 Antitank (AT) Mine	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-3-1018.05-R01A	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP ARTEP 5-463-10-MTP ARTEP 5-463-12-MTP
05-3-1018.05-R01D	CONDUCT TROOP-LEADING PROCEDURES	ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Prepare Preconstructed Obstacles (05-3-0204)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-102)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element leader is issued an obstacle folder and directed to emplace the obstacle. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prepares prechamber shafts and beam-post obstacles on bridges in exact compliance with the obstacle folder for turnover or execution. The element completes a three-shaft prechamber obstacle in 90 minutes. The squad completes a 54-beam-post obstacle in four hours. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The squad prepares a prechamber shaft according to the standards or criteria outlined in the obstacle folder.		
* 2. The squad leader draws the required demolition material from the location identified in the folder.		
* 3. The squad leader obtains special tools (T-handle wrenches, shaft-cover lifting hooks, and loading poles) listed in the folder. The crew-- a. Opened the prechamber shaft nearest the enemy first. b. Loaded each prechamber shaft with 25-kilogram DM41 charges (four per meter of shaft depth). NOTE: The DM41 charge is designed to fit European prechamber shafts. c. Dual-primed the last charge in each shaft. d. Installed the firing system by using existing plastic lines to pull the branch lines through the conduits. e. Laid ring mains along the side of the road.		
* 4. The squad leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader/sergeant.		
5. The squad completes a three-shaft system in 90 minutes.		
6. The squad prepares a beam-post obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder. a. Drew from supply the required steel I-beams. b. Located special tools (T-handle wrenches and lifting hooks) identified in the folder.		
7. The crew opens the shaft covers and removes the crossbar beginning with the enemy row.		
8. A section carries an I-beam and lowers it into the shaft, enemy row first.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The squad may improve the enemy-side double row by placing two rolls of concertina, one on top of the other, over each row of beams. They position a camouflage net over the entire double row. 9. The squad completes three double rows that are 12 meters wide (54 I-beams) in 4 hours and reports the intermediate status and completion to higher headquarters (HQ). *10. The squad leader completes the obstacle folder and submits it to the platoon leader/sergeant. 11. The squad prepares a bridge for demolition as directed in the obstacle folder. The squad leader -- a. Determined the location of the required demolition material and drew it from supply. b. Located any special tools identified in the folder. 12. The crew places charges as directed in the obstacle folder and prepares the firing systems. If the charges are dual-primed, the crew ensures that each system is independent. 13. The squad prepares the demolition target. 14. The squad members prepare the demolition target to state 1, if it is a preliminary target, and advise higher HQ that they are ready to execute the target. If permission is given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed. *15. The squad leader, following procedures in the obstacle folder, may turn over the target to a demolition firing party. 16. If the squad executes the target, follow the procedures outlined in the Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2123. *17. The squad leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results of the demolition to higher HQ. He may improve the obstacle as directed in the obstacle folder; for example, laying mines. *18. The squad leader completes Section 5 of the obstacle folder and submits the completed folder to the platoon leader/sergeant.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)
(FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)
(TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An enemy assault penetrates the element's position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable those items that the platoon cannot haul or move. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled. a. Used information in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Identified critical equipment as communication (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems. c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.		
* 2. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs unit members. a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and any of the communications equipment. b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses. c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers. d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires. e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.		
* 3. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members. a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all the dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all the antennas. b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The platoon leader determines the amount of barrier material (the mines, the wire, and the explosives) to use and destroys the remaining items with explosives. * 5. The platoon leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions. a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction. b. Considered the quantity and the type of explosive. c. Considered whether to use an electric or a nonelectric firing system. d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The platoon's members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the platoon leader's plan. * 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-0303.05-R01A)
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)
(FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to construct a wire obstacle at an 8-digit grid location to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. The element has the materials available to construct the wire obstacle. The wire obstacles may be emplaced as tactical or protective obstacles. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces the obstacle to standard according to higher headquarters (HQ) requirements (tactical [disrupt, fix, turn, or block] or protective) and timeline. The element sites and constructs the obstacle, performs an obstacle turn over, and reports to higher HQ or supported maneuver unit HQ. Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. They update overlays and provide appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the applicable Standardization Agreement (STANAG). The element completes the wire obstacle within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducted in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to construct a wire obstacle to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the TSOP. c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the wire obstacle. d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). f. Conducted a risk-management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit's SOP or the TSOP.		
* 2. The element leader prepares to construct a wire obstacle. a. Reconnoitered the site to consider needed security, potential actions on contact, and the accessibility of materials. b. Organized the work party.		
* 3. The element leader and overwatch units site the obstacle as part of the overwatch unit's engagement area (EA) development process. NOTE: Cover the obstacle with direct and/or indirect fire.		
4. The element constructs the wire obstacle. a. Used triple-standard concertina. (1) Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side. (2) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. NOTE: 1 meter equals 1.3 paces. (3) Staggered the rear row.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Secured the bottom rolls with horizontal wire on both the enemy side and the friendly side. (5) Anchored the horizontal wire to the anchor (short) pickets, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from the end of the (long) picket. (6) Secured the top roll, the horizontal wire, and the bottom roll on the friendly side with wire ties midway between pickets. (7) Completed construction within the time standard. NOTE: The time standard is 1 squad hour per 100 meters during the daylight and 1.5 squad hours per 100 meters in the darkness. b. Prepared the knife rest. (1) Prepared a knife rest 3 to 5 meters long. (2) Secured the knife rest to the ground 3 to 5 meters between the cross members with a minimum height of 1.2 meters and tightly lashed together. (3) Completed construction within the time standard. NOTE: The time standard is 1 squad hour per knife rest during the daylight and 1.5 squad hours per knife rest in the darkness. c. Prepared a double-apron 4-2 pace. (1) Laid the fence centerline. (2) Spaced the long pickets at 3-meter (4-pace) intervals. (3) Spaced the anchor pickets 1.5 meters (2-paces) in each direction away from the centerline and midway between the long pickets. (4) Installed all 12 wires working from the enemy side to the friendly side. NOTE: No antitank mines should be placed in the fence. (5) Used the correct wire ties and ensured that all of the wires were tight. (6) Completed construction within the time standard. NOTE: The time standard is 3 squad hours per 100 meters during the daylight and 4.5 squad hours per 100 meters in the darkness. d. Constructed an eleven-row antivehicular wire obstacle. (1) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. (2) Placed the concertina wire over the long pickets and placed a 20-centimeter-diameter log between the 5th and the 6th row. (3) Anchored the horizontal wires to the anchor stakes, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from each end of the concertina. (4) Ensured that the obstacle was no less than 10 meters deep (11 rows). (5) Completed construction within the time standard (for every entanglement, 15-meters (17 yards) wide and 10 meters deep (11 rows) is 1squad hour during the daylight and 2 squad hours during the darkness). NOTE: The time standard for every entanglement is 15 meters wide and 10 meters deep (11 rows), which allows 1squad hour during daytime and 2 squad hours during darkness. * 5. The element leader submits the initiation reports, the status updates, and the completion reports to higher HQ according to the unit's SOP or the TSOP. * 6. The element leader conducts an obstacle turnover to the overwatch unit according to the unit's SOP or TSOP. NOTE: Refer to Field Manual (FM) 20-32 for information on how to prepare an obstacle turnover checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-0304)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting a maneuver unit in establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs vehicle fighting positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapon system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. Digital units have the capability to send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and the location of the positions.		
* 2. The platoon leader estimates the completion time based on the maneuver unit's vehicles and the positions required; he uses the unit's planning factors to estimate the completion time.		
* 3. The platoon leader prioritizes construction based on the directives from the maneuver commander.		
4. The platoon constructs the positions in the order of the commander's priorities. a. Prepared hasty positions for the fighting vehicles. Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from the high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provided limited concealment. (1) Excavated and built up a frontal parapet as high as practical without interfering with the vehicle's weapon system. (2) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the vehicle sides. (3) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions, as time permitted. b. Prepared deliberate positions for fighting vehicles to protect them from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (for example, the Sabot). See FM 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles. (1) Constructed positions in four parts. NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade. (a) Constructed a hull defilade. (b) Constructed a concealed access ramp or route. (c) Constructed a hiding location. (d) Constructed a turret defilade. (2) Flattened out or hauled away the spoil.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Adjusted position depths listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain; for example, the position depth on a reverse slope will not be as great as on level ground. (4) Ensured that the position suited the vehicle's requirements by driving the vehicle into the position at various stages of construction. * 5. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

TASK: Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt the enemy's efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts the unit's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the unit's allotted time).

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Construct a Log Obstacle (05-3-0307)
(FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The maneuver commander orders the construction of log obstacles to support the defensive scheme. Intelligence reports indicate adequate standing timber is on-site. A small emplacement excavator (SEE) or a front-end loader is available and the platoon provides local job security. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs a log obstacle tied to existing or reinforced obstacles to block or delay the enemy. Obstacles stop or delay an enemy's main battle tank (MBT). Digital units submit reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP), overlays, and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant conducts a ground reconnaissance with the squad leaders if possible. a. Identified the dispersion areas. b. Identified the routes to and from the site. c. Identified the availability and location of materials. d. Identified the overwatch positions. e. Digital units conduct the above subtask steps using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.		
2. The platoon constructs log hurdles.		
* 3. The platoon leader selects a site where log hurdles cannot be readily bypassed. The leader sites the hurdles on the steepest part of a slope and as near to the top as possible.		
* 4. The platoon leader selects three 25-centimeter-diameter logs or one 45-centimeter-diameter log for each hurdle. The platoon-- a. Staked the logs firmly in place across a roadway or on the ground of a bypass route. b. Lashed the log poles to the stakes, placing the stakes no more than 1.5 meters apart. c. Buried the securing stakes a minimum of 60 centimeters in the ground with 60 centimeters remaining above ground. d. Constructed each log hurdle within one squad hour.		
* 5. The platoon leader sends the progress completion reports to higher headquarters (HQ) by secure means.		
* 6. The platoon leader determines the log crib to construct and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be readily bypassed. The platoon--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Constructed the rectangular log crib with a 6-meter front, facing one corner of the triangular log crib towards the enemy. b. Only used the logs that were a minimum of 20 centimeters in diameter.		
* 7. The platoon leader ensures that all vertical logs are cut about 3 meters long and emplaced 1.5 meters below the ground. The platoon-- a. Placed the vertical logs 1.8 meters apart. b. Secured the logs together and filled the center with earth taken from the enemy side of the obstacle. c. Constructed the log crib within eight platoon hours. d. Constructed a log-post obstacle.		
* 8. The platoon leader determines the length and depth of the log post obstacle and ties it into the natural terrain so that it cannot be easily bypassed. The platoon-- a. Constructed the log-post obstacle with a minimum of four rows, an irregular spacing of 1 to 2 meters between posts, an irregular height of 75 to 120 centimeters, 1.5 meters underground, and a minimum of 40 centimeters in diameter. b. Attached wire to the posts in an irregular pattern.		
* 9. The platoon leader determines the work rate based on the length of the front and available personnel and equipment (such as a pile driver, auger, or hand tools).		
10. The platoon constructs the log-post obstacle within plus 10 percent of the time calculated in step 9.		
*11. The platoon leader sends progress completion reports to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-0312)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The element has organic hand tools, a bulldozer, a high-mobility engineer escalator (HMEE), a deployable universal combat earthmover (DEUCE), and a crane. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs bunkers and shelters, providing protection from the direct or indirect fire and the weather as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. They update the common operational picture (COP) to provide current situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and the location of the bunkers and shelters. a. Used natural shelters such as caves, mines, and tunnels whenever possible. b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors. NOTES: 1. If constructed underground, it provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment. 2. If constructed as a cut and cover, it requires partial excavation and backfill. 3. If constructed aboveground, it can be constructed quickly and requires less labor. 4. The aboveground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or the water table is excessively high. c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible. d. Prepared construction-time estimates using the man-hours found in FM 5-103. e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans found in FM 5-103. f. Constructed the shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.		
2. The platoon constructs the bunkers and shelters. a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter. b. Sloped the floor a minimum of 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance. c. If lights were used inside, hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside. d. Checked the cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1 cubic foot per minute in the bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. This condition was met when light drapes covering the vents were moved by incoming air. Used the stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation. f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through. g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection. (1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover. (2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the aboveground cavity wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover. (3) The steel-framed/fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover. (4) The hardened frame/fabric shelters, concrete arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover. h. Camouflaged and concealed all of the shelters. 3. The platoon improves the bunkers or shelters as time permits, by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage. * 4. The platoon leader reports the construction status mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Prepare Expedient Fords (05-3-0603)
(FM 5-34) (FM 3-34.2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient ford. The mission statement specifies a site location, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and a completion time. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element constructs a ford providing unimpeded passage of the traffic density for which it was designed. Gaps less than or equal to 50 meters are prepared in 1 hour. Gaps more than 50 meters are prepared in 2 hours. Digital units submit completion reports and locations of ford sites via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon constructs the approaches to the ford. a. Constructed the slope approaches no greater than 1:3 for wheeled and 1:2 for tracked vehicles. b. Placed the material removed from the banks to the side and not in the stream. 2. The platoon prepares the ford bottom. a. Filled the short, deep gaps with rock or gravel. b. Prepared the soft-mud bottoms with tree limbs, brush, or timbers and covered them with rock or coarse gravel. c. Ensured that the width was 6 meters, plus or minus 1 meter. 3. The platoon marks the edges of the ford. a. Ensured that poles were placed 1.5 meters apart across the stream width on both sides of the ford and at least 1.5 meters above the water level. 4. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces' (OPFOR) area of operations. The OPFOR have received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the element's main body.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

TASK: Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-4-0102)
(FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a field environment, an order has been received from your higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that your element emplaced within your assigned sector. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are rendered safe and are removed, or accounted for, without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all the mines are disarmed and removed. Digital units send and receive reports through frequency modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield. NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission. 2. The squad leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond. a. If necessary, the security force employed smoke on the far side to conceal mine removal. b. The security force remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared. 3. The squad leader determines the best method for removing the mines. a. If the minefield had been under constant observation from the time it was laid and had not been tampered with, the squad leader directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines. The squad leader used Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed. b. If the minefield had not been under constant observation and may have been tampered with, or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines, the squad leader used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members as to the location and types of mines to be removed. 4. The squad leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and any other items that accompanied the emplaced mines. 5. The removal team locates "safeties" and removes the mines within the minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The removal team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to "B1" using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R; then the team moves from "B1" to the mine and removes the mine. If "B1" is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to "B2" using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth from "B2" to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at "A1," "B1," "A2," and "B2" are necessary because it's safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine. a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30-meters between removal personnel. Removal personnel did not run and only moved around in cleared areas. b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it. c. Checked the sides and bottoms of the mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found. NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise. d. Replaced all pins, clips, or other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground. e. If equipped, turned any arming dials to "safe" or "unarmed." f. If the mine had a screw-type fuze, removed the fuze and took it away from the mine. If the detonator was not built-in, the team took the fuze from the mine. g. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on "safe." (1) If the mine was put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it, he lifted it directly from the hole after rendering it "safe." (2) If the mine had not been kept in sight, attached a 60-meter long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole. h. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed. 6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability. 7. The squad leader confirms the "safety" of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R. NOTE: The squad leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all of the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, make sure it was caused by a land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery are generally elongated. 8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use. NOTE: This is honed only after the squad leader confirms each mine has been disarmed and safe. a. Repacked mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use. b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP. 9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use. 10. The squad leader submits a report of change to his higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared. NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and the maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
11. The squad leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means	STP 5-12B1-SM STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) received orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

STANDARD: The OPFOR delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Improve a Vehicle Lane Through a Minefield (05-4-0105)
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The maneuver company encounters a minefield and conducts an in-stride breach to pass attacking vehicles. The engineer element is directed to improve the lane for the company. The engineer element has its organic assets and sufficient demolitions to accomplish the task. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The maneuver force provides on-site security and the lane is not under enemy fire. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element widens, proofs (ensures that there are no mines in the lanes), and marks the lanes to allow maneuver forces to continue the mission. The element sustains no casualties from mines or booby traps. Friendly forces using the lanes sustain no casualties to mines or booby traps. The element clears the lanes according to the rates specified in Field Manual (FM) 5-34. Digital units submit reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digitally means to ensure the common operating picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA) are updated and available. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The squad leader determines the lane width supporting the commander's maneuver scheme (8 meters for one-way and 16 meters for two-way vehicle traffic).		
* 2. The squad leader selects the method to improve the lane, taking into account personnel, equipment, safety, and time. NOTE: Explosive breaching using hand-emplaced charges is the quickest, most efficient method. Manual breaching (removal by hand) is least preferred because it is the slowest and most hazardous method.		
* 3. The squad leader organizes the squad for lane improvement. NOTE: For explosive breaching the squad organizes detecting, marking, and explosive-placement personnel. For manual breaching the squad organizes into detecting, marking, and mine-removal personnel.		
4. The squad improves the lane to the width supporting the maneuver scheme.		
5. The squad leader supervises safety procedures, including the use of protective clothing, limited movement in the minefield, and proper dispersion of personnel.		
6. The squad members locate mines by probing or electronic detector. They mark the mine locations and place charges or remove the mines by grappling hook.		
7. The squad leader ensures that the detector operators are relieved every 20 minutes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. The squad leader ensures that the detector operators work at least 8 meters apart. 9. The squad leader ensures that all personnel have taken cover or are lying prone at least 50 meters from the mines during removal operations. All personnel remain in protective positions for 30 seconds after the squad completes removal operations to allow for possible time-delay fuses. 10. The squad, depending on the time and the situation, fuses a line-main firing system to detonate several or all explosives or detonates each charge individually. 11. The squad leader evacuates all personnel to a safe distance or location before detonating the explosives. 12. The squad, using detectors or other methods, verifies the absence of mines in the lane. 13. The squad marks the improved lane. a. Marked the entrance and exit, as a minimum. b. Used available resources to begin temporary marking. c. Improved the marking, if time and assets permit, by using the standard minefield marking set number 2 or the M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS). d. Marked the sides of the lane to prevent vehicles or personnel from straying into the minefield, if time and assets permitted. 14. The squad leader records the lane improvement. a. Completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. b. Marked the form "revised." 15. The squad leader reports work-status changes and improvement completion to higher headquarters. a. Reported work-status changes and work completion according to the unit's standing operating procedures (SOPs). b. Reported the completion of the improvement within 10 minutes of finishing the marking procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-3050	DIRECT A MINE SWEEPING TEAM	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER
052-192-4052	SUPERVISE MINEFIELD CLEARING OPERATIONS	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Mark a Minefield (05-4-0110)
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The squad, separately or as part of the emplacing unit, receives the mission to mark a friendly minefield that is being emplaced or is already in place. Squad members determine the location of the minefield from the emplacing party personnel, Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1355 and 1355-1-R, or a scatterable mine record and report. The logistic planning for the marking of the minefield is done. The squad has the necessary material to mark the minefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The squad marks the location of minefield boundaries, gaps, and lanes so that there are no friendly casualties to mines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The squad leader organizes personnel and directs members to assemble all equipment and materials. a. Organized the squad into teams to drive pickets, string wire, post signs, and carry materials for uninterrupted marking. b. Positioned materials at intervals around the minefield to limit hauling requirements. Materials included wire (barbed or concertina), pickets, mine warning signs, a standard mine marking set, and an M133 hand-emplaced minefield marking set (HEMMS).		
2. The teams carry wire gauntlets, wire cutters, sledgehammers, or an expedient picket-driving device to ensure smooth construction of the fence.		
3. The squad marks the minefield boundaries.		
* 4. The squad leader places the first fence picket at least 15 meters from the right-rear boundary marker.		
5. The squad members install pickets in a pattern to avoid indicating the exact boundary of the minefield. NOTE: Do not install pickets closer than 15 meters to any mine.		
* 6. The squad leader determines the boundaries of the minefield from the scatterable mine record or from the emplacing unit when marking a scatterable minefield.		
7. The squad installs pickets no closer than 60 meters from the centerline of the first and last belt for the Modular Pack Mine System (MOPMS), wide-area munition (WAM), and Volcano minefields.		
8. The squad installs pickets no closer than 15 meters from the starting and ending row markers.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. For artillery-delivered scatterable minefields, the squad installs pickets around the established safety zones identified on the scatterable-mine record and report.		
10. The squad installs two strands of wire concurrently, one ankle high and the second waist high around the minefield, and places mine warning signs 10 to 50 meters apart on the upper wire.		
11. The squad marks safe lanes and gaps through the minefield.		
12. The squad uses the following guidance for safe lanes and gaps: footpaths are 1 meter wide; one-way vehicle traffic is 8 meters wide; two-way vehicle traffic is 16 meters wide; and gaps are greater than 100 meters wide.		
13. The squad's members mark the safety lanes in forward areas by using rock piles, short wooden stakes, and so forth, so as not to expose the lane locations to the enemy.		
14. The squad's members mark lanes in the rear areas similar to boundaries and emplace luminous marking devices (such as HEMMS, standard marking mines set) visible only from the friendly side of the minefield.		
*15. The squad leader reports mission completion to the next higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-192-2026	DIRECT A MINEFIELD MARKING PARTY	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, the vehicles, or the equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the enemy unit's main body. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits the enemy's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach the enemy forces' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys the equipment and the supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking the reinforcements. 10. Forces the enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Create an Abatis (05-4-0205)
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The squad is ordered to create an abatis. Department of the Army (DA) Form 2203-R is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The site selected complies with the requirements for an effective abatis. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element creates an abatis within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The abatis is a minimum of 75 meters deep and tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. There are 10 to 25 trees on each side of the road. Seventy-five percent of the trees are attached to their stumps. The abatis stops or delays an enemy main-battle tank (MBT). Digital units submit reports and obstacle locations according to the unit's tactical standard operating procedures (TSOP) via digital or frequency modulated (FM) means. DA Forms 2203-R are submitted according to the applicable STANAG requirements. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The squad leader obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report. NOTE: This information can be provided by the squad leader or collected from other sources such as the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or other units. a. Detailed a plan and side-view sketch showing the overall dimensions and lines of cut. b. Determined the spacing between trees to be cut, the tree diameters, the amount of explosives required for each tree, and examples of charge placement. c. Detailed a sketch showing the firing initiation system. d. Itemized a bill of explosives showing the quantity and types, a list of equipment, and an estimation of time and labor needed to prepare and fire the demolition.		
2. To minimize the time spent on-site, the squad prepares materials and equipment for the demolition; for example, primes blocks of explosive with detonating cord and prepares individual charges.		
* 3. The squad leader issues orders to the squad using the five-paragraph field-order format. The orders emphasize site security and noise and light discipline, and ensure that each member knows exactly what to do.		
4. The squad moves to the obstacle location. a. Ensured that no personnel rode in the rear of a vehicle carrying explosives. b. Carried the blasting caps in a separate vehicle. NOTE: If this is not possible, place the caps in a closed metal can; carry them in the front of the vehicle and carry the explosives in the rear.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The squad leader selects the trees to be cut based on anticipated enemy vehicles. The trees are measured at a point on the trunk 1.5 meters above the ground. a. Selected trees approximately 60 centimeters in diameter to oppose tracked vehicles. b. Selected trees spaced 3 to 4 meters apart to provide sufficient obstacle density. NOTES: 1. This method prevents vehicles, especially tracks, from driving over the tops of fallen trees. 2. The platoon leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to ensure that the final obstacle location is covered by direct or indirect fire and is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. 6. The squad creates an abatis using pioneer tools. a. Cut the trees on one side of the trail or road. (1) Felled the trees at a 45-degree angle to the road with the tops toward the enemy. (2) Cut the trees 1.5 meters above the ground. (3) Did not cut the trees completely through the trunk; allowed the trunk to remain attached to the stump to impede the enemy in clearing the obstacle. b. Used the same procedures on the opposite side of the rode; cut the trees and felled them on the top of the previously cut trees. 7. The squad creates an abatis with explosives. a. Prepared a test shot on a tree. (1) Calculated the charge using P = D2/50-- where: P = pounds of TNT, D = diameter of tree in inches at 1.5 meters from the ground. NOTE: Formula is pounds equals diameter squared divided by 50. (2) Removed the bark before placing the charge. (3) Placed the charge 1.5 meters above the ground on the side of the direction of fall. (4) Primed the charge in the center of the outside face of the explosives. Ensured that the charge was twice as wide as it was high and 2.5 or 5.0 centimeters thick. (5) Attached the charge firmly with tape, wire, or twine. b. Fired the test shot and adjusted the charges as necessary. Calculated the charge for each tree using the test-shot data. c. Placed charges on all the trees to be felled. See Subtask 7a. d. Laid ring mains and attached branch lines with a girth hitch and one extra turn. (1) Checked the initiation system for breaks. (2) Ensured that the detonating cord, ring mains, and branch lines had no sharp bends and did not cross over each other except where connected by knots or detonating-cord clips. (3) Placed two ring mains on each side of the road if the charges were dual-primed. 8. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a reserved target) and awaits orders to arm and fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. The squad prepares the demolition target to state 1 (if it is a preliminary target) and advises higher headquarters (HQ) that it is ready to execute the target. If permission has been given to execute the target upon completion, the target is brought to state 2 and executed. *10. The squad leader may turn over the target to a demolition firing party. Whenever possible, the turnover procedures are as detailed as those found in part 4 of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) obstacle folder. See Field Manual (FM) 5-250. 11. The squad executes the target. 12. The squad improves the abatis, if time permits. a. Laid mines and booby traps (if authority was given) along the enemy-side approaches and in the first 10 meters of the obstacle. Recorded the placement on DA Form 1355. b. Used wire rope to join the trees together beginning on the enemy side. c. Laid concertina wire to enhance the mines and booby traps on the enemy side. NOTE: The wire can be laid throughout the abatis. *13. The squad leader reports the intermediate status, completion, and results to higher HQ, to include the obstacle depth and possible bypass routes.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base-defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

STANDARD: Maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards the captured documents, the equipment, and the personnel.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) encounter an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

STANDARD: Bypass or breach the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes, and pass their entire force through it. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and/or dense wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The element leader has selected the location, and the platoon leader has approved the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The crew constructs crew-served weapon fighting positions providing coverage of the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means, updating the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The crew constructs a machine-gun position having a primary and secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the unit's front), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire. b. Dug the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner. c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire. d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection if it did not interfere with the sectors of fire. e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon. f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon. g. Reduced the weapon's height by digging the tripod platform down as much as possible, yet keeping the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire. h. Dug a one-soldier fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench. i. Dug the hole to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole. j. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of one entrenching tool at both ends of the hole. k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage. m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover. 2. The crew constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. a. Dug the position in a V shape, with the firing position in the apex of the V. b. Constructed the position following procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover. 3. The crew constructs a 90-millimeter recoilless rifle position; reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle-blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. The backblast area was cleared of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position. b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the crew built cover on the flanks. c. Dug the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole. d. Dug grenade sumps approximately the width and depth of an entrenching tool at each end of the hole. e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the rifle stood at the front of the position. f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage. NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast). g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)
(FM 21-16)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. Digital units report the locations via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital means updating information for the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit recognizes the UXO hazard. a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions.		
* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures.		
* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.		
* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured the UXO was visible from all markers.		
* 5. The unit reports the UXO hazard. a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
093-403-5010	RECOGNIZE MILITARY EXPLOSIVE ORDNANCE BY TYPE	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT
093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Use Passive Air-Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)
(FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) do not detect the unit. Digital units send reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a tactical position. a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the personnel and the equipment to limit vulnerability. Air situational awareness (SA) was achieved by the unit's monitoring of the simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs). b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect the personnel and the vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). g. Established a listening watch on the air-defense early-warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.		
* 2. The unit leader uses passive air-defense measures in a convoy. a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing. b. Camouflaged the vehicles and the equipment before moving out. c. Selected column interval based on the instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank). e. Assigned soldiers to air-guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees. f. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air-attack alarms. 3. Unit personnel use passive air-defense measures when occupying or displacing. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360 degrees, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Take Active Combined-Arms Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)
(FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. The unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, UAVs) away from friendly positions. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air-attack alarm. b. Organized the unit to defensive positions. c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to the higher headquarters (HQ). NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms prior to engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act. DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to the allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation. e. Made the engagement decision. f. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position. g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement. h. Directed the personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Sent the PIRs to the higher HQ. NOTES: (1) The aim points for the propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for the helicopters. (2) Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals approximately 91 meters. (3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and the machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts. (4) Establish the preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position. (5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results. TYPE AERIAL PLATFORMS COURSE AIM POINT Jet/Cruise Missile Crossing Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose Jet/Cruise Missile Overhead Two football fields in front of aerial platform nose Jet/Cruise Missile Directly at you Slightly above aerial platforms nose Helicopter/UAV Crossing One-half football field in front of nose Helicopter/UAV Directly at you Slightly above helicopter/UAV body Helicopter/UAV Hovering Slightly above helicopter/UAV body j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the unit commander. * 2. The leaders direct small arms air-defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target. a. Gave the air-attack alarm. b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth, or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit. c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion. d. Engaged the nonattacking aircraft only as directed. e. Identified the threat aerial platforms visually. f. Reported all aerial platforms action to the higher HQ. g. Prepared the unit to engage on the orders of the senior leader. h. Engaged the unit (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms. i. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement of aircraft. * 3. The leaders direct combined-arms air-defense measures against the aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air-attack alarm. b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). c. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the engagement. d. Ensured that personnel assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors. e. Reported any aircraft action to the higher HQ. f. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ. g. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The unit leader, or noncommissioned officers (NCOs), directs small arms air-defense measures during the convoy movement. a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road, or off the road if possible. Turned to covered, concealed positions, if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals, or increased the interval or dispersion. The vehicle operators used evasive driving techniques. d. Ordered the unit to dismount and take up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified the aerial platforms. g. Engaged the unit in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. h. Directed personnel to reload their weapons following the attack. i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to the higher HQ. j. Reported any casualties to the higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Perform Risk-Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
(AR 385-10) (FM 100-5) (FM 25-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All leaders and soldiers are aware of all potential safety problems inherent in the conduct of the task. The company trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger unit members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards. a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for the specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the missions or conditions changed. * 2. The leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation. a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high-, medium-, or low-risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses. * 3. The commander, or leaders, eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards. a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements prior to all of the operations. 4. The element carries out the safety procedures. a. Received safety briefings prior to all of the operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all of the mission rehearsals. c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections. NOTES: 1. Safety is a part of realism-- and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(refer to Field Manual [FM] 25-100). 2. Risk: FM 100-5 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the Air-Land Battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Formally, risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Construct a Nonstandard Fixed Bridge (05-3-0619)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-446)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon receives the mission to construct a nonstandard fixed bridge capable of passing two-lane military load class (MLC) 20 tracked and wheeled traffic along a main supply or along the lines of the communication route. A reconnaissance has been completed and a bypass is considered difficult. A construction directive with plans and specifications is provided. The site has been selected. The enemy direct fire has been suppressed. Site security and internal communications have been established. The platoon has the required materials and construction equipment organic to the unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon and the attachments construct a nonstandard fixed bridge ready to cross one-lane MLC 20 tracked or wheeled traffic no later than the time designated in the mission statement. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader plans the construction. a. Reconnoitered the site to measure the gap length and depth, check soil conditions, and identify access and egress routes and the location for materiel-storage areas. b. Determined all materiel and transportation requirements based on the mission statement. c. Submitted requests for the required construction equipment, materiel, and transportation. d. Developed a construction schedule by estimating the time required to complete individual tasks and the total project. e. Issued the order. (1) Demanded adherence to safety procedures in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and Field Manual (FM) 5-446. (2) Outlined actions in the event of an enemy attack.		
* 2. The platoon sergeant organizes work parties and the work site. a. Organized (as a minimum) the layout, substructure, superstructure, cutting, and materiel-issue crews (additional crews may be needed for special operations such as pile driving or welding). b. Designated a safety noncommissioned officer (NCO). c. Set up materiel-storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Assigned layout tasks to squads. (1) Established the centerline and the baseline. (2) Located abutments and intermediate supports.		
* 3. The platoon leader manages the construction of the bridge. a. Monitored safety. b. Ensured that the centerline was established according to the plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Verified the location of abutments and intermediate supports. d. Managed the construction schedule. e. Maintained construction notes. f. Approved changes to the original plans. g. Submitted progress reports according to the unit's SOP.		
* 4. The platoon sergeant supervises construction of the bridge. a. Monitored safety. b. Reallocated personnel and equipment as needed. c. Supervised construction crews and techniques. d. Ensured adherence to plans and specifications. e. Notified the platoon leader of changes to the original plans. f. Ensured quality control.		
* 5. The platoon sergeant supervises site cleanup. a. Directed debris removal. b. Prepared excess salvageable materials for return to the battalion's Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		
* 6. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant classifies the bridge. a. Inspected the bridge. b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1249 showing the as-built condition. c. Classified the bridge. d. Ensured bridge classification signs were posted at both ends of the bridge.		
* 7. The platoon leader reports that the bridge is completed and ready for the traffic to cross.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Construct an Expedient Landing Zone for Helicopters (05-3-0701)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-34.230) (FM 5-34)
(FM 5-430-00-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient landing zone (LZ) for helicopters and to give the general location of the site. The LZ will be used by single UH-60 helicopters for approximately 3 days. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon constructs an expedient LZ capable of supporting UH-60 and UH-1B helicopter operations within 3 hours. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader coordinates with the company for additional tools and supplies.		
* 2. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant selects the site. a. Conducted a map reconnaissance identifying the possible sites. The sites-- (1) Met the tactical requirements. (2) Had slopes of less than 3 percent. b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance of possible sites. Selected a site-- (1) Having a minimum number of trees. The UH-60 or the UH-1B requires a 30.5 meters by 30.5 meters clear area. See Field Manuals (FMs) 5-430-00-1 and 5-430-00-2 (2) With no approach or departure obstructions. The approach or departure zone required a surface ratio of 10:1. (3) With ground access.		
* 3. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant directs the site layout. a. Defined the boundaries of the LZ. b. Designated the approach or the departure zone. c. Set up the material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.		
4. The platoon clears the LZ and the glide path. a. Cleared obstructions from the glide path. b. Removed trees using pioneer tools or demolitions. c. Cleared brush from the LZ. d. Marked the LZ. (1) Marked the four corners with regulation panels that were 50 centimeters by 65 centimeters. (2) Marked obstructions; for example, wires and tree stumps nearest the LZ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant reports the mission's progress and completion to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges (05-3-0707)
(FM 5-446) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon has received a mission to reinforce and/or repair an existing bridge superstructure to allow for two-lane military load class (MLC) 70 tracked or wheeled traffic along a combat route. A reconnaissance has been completed and a bypass is considered difficult. A method of reinforcement or repair has been selected. Enemy direct fire is suppressed and internal communications are established. Site security is provided. Required materials and equipment are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon reinforces or repairs an existing bridge ready to cross MLC 70 tracked and wheeled traffic no later than the time designated in the mission statement.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader plans the construction. a. Reconnoitered the site, evaluated the condition of the existing bridge, checked soil conditions, and located access and egress routes and materiel storage areas. b. Determined all material and transportation requirements based on the mission statement. c. Submitted requests for required construction equipment, materiel, and transportation. d. Developed a construction schedule by estimating the task durations and total project duration. e. Issued the order. (1) Demanded adherence to safety procedures according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and Field Manual (FM) 5-446. (2) Outlined the reaction to an enemy attack.		
* 2. The platoon sergeant organizes work parties and the work site. a. Organized (as a minimum) the layout, substructure, superstructure, cutting, and materiel issue crews. b. Appointed a safety noncommissioned officer (NCO). c. Directed the removal of old bridge debris, if present. d. Set up camouflaged materiel storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. e. Assigned layout tasks to squads. (1) Established survey control (centerlines and baselines), as needed. (2) Located the position of new intermediate supports or abutments.		
* 3. The platoon leader manages the reinforcement and/or repair of the bridge.		
* 4. The platoon sergeant supervises the reinforcement and/or repair of the bridge.		
* 5. The platoon leader or the platoon sergeant reclassifies the bridge. a. Inspected the bridge. b. Prepared a Department of the Army (DA) Form 1249 showing the new condition of the bridge.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Calculated the new bridge classification, if qualified. If unqualified, forwarded the information to the next engineer officer qualified to classify the bridge. d. Ensured bridge classification signs were posted at both ends of the bridge. * 6. The platoon leader reports to higher headquarters (HQ) when the bridge is complete and ready for traffic crossing.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order	STP 5-12B24-SM-TG STP 5-2-IBCT-TASKS STP 5-62G13-SM-TG STP BREACHER

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Place Airfield Matting on Prepared Surfaces (05-3-0785)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)
(FM 5-436)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon receives an operation order (OPORD) to place airfield matting on a prepared surface. The mission statement specifies the runway, taxiway, and apron dimensions and completion time. The surface area is prepared. Airfield membrane and matting is pre-positioned at the site. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon places airfield matting at a rate of 32.5 square meters per man-hour (for trained troops). The matting is certified for use. Digital units send reports and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures. In addition, the platoon leader coordinates with the company for construction equipment, tools, and materials.		
* 2. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant establishes jobsite security.		
* 3. The platoon leader inventories pre-positioned matting to ensure that adequate stocks are on hand.		
* 4. The platoon leader inspects the airfield surface to ensure that it has been properly prepared (leveled, no depressions, and minimum grade changes). The platoon repairs or requests assistance as appropriate.		
* 5. The platoon leader organizes the platoon and assigns specific tasks according to Field Manual (FM) 5-436.		
6. The platoon places membrane and airfield matting. a. Located and marked the centerline of the runway, taxiway, and apron. b. Placed the matting according to FM 5-436. c. The Army Aviation Safety Officer or Air Force Combat Control Team certifies the matting for use.		
* 7. The platoon leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

STANDARD: The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) dispatch small teams into the enemy's rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

STANDARD: The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Disrupt Assembly-Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: Intelligence reports indicate platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from assembly areas with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) capabilities.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates and disrupts the enemy's AA activities. 1. Locates the element's AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts the element's preparations (prevents or delays beyond the element's allotted time).

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Receive a Logistical Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-1600)
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in continuous operations. Logistical support is needed for follow-on missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistical support is required in order to maintain combat effectiveness. The platoon is prepared to receive and receives the logistical package (LOGPAC) according to the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant determines the platoon's combat service support (CSS) needs for an operation and initiates the request. a. Forwarded the request to the company's first sergeant (1SG), if not attached to a support unit. b. Forwarded the request to the supported maneuver unit's 1SG, if attached to the unit, and provided a copy of the report to the engineer higher headquarters (HQ).		
* 2. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant coordinates with the 1SG for the technique, time, and location of the LOGPAC.		
3. The assault and obstacle (A&O) platoon assists the 1SG with pickup and delivery of supplies, when required.		
* 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant supervises resupply operations. a. Organized for resupply. (1) Moved the platoon tactically to the company's resupply point, if delivered by the service station method. (2) Instructed the squad on the order of supply, if received by the tailgate method. b. Welcomed new personnel and assigned them to a squad, if received. c. Transferred enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), if required. d. Ensured that all medical needs were met. e. Ensured that maintenance was kept on all vehicles; weapons; radios; and nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) equipment. f. Ensured that all petroleum, oils, lubricants (POL) requirements were met. g. Ensured that all administration needs were met. h. Ensured that all mail was received. i. Ensured that all classes of supply were received. j. Inspected each squad before they left the resupply point.		
* 5. The platoon leader ensures that security is maintained through the entire resupply operation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

STANDARD: Infiltrates the enemy's base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

TASK: Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

STANDARD: The OPFOR attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue "bogus" orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)
(FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
(FM 57-38)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TSOP, OPORD, provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. Digital units send information via frequency modulated (FM) or through digital systems. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to transport casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties. a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP. b. Identified casualty collection points. c. Identified transport requirements. d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TSOP. f. Coordinated security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and higher HQ operations element. g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel. h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TSOP.		
2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport. a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties. NOTE: See task 08-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures. b. Reported casualties, as required. c. Collected classified documents such as the signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists. d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TSOP. e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries. a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and injury. b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries. a. Identified litter teams. b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required. c. Secured the casualty on the litter. d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
5. Unit personnel transport casualties to a medical treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles. a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6. b. Secured casualties in the vehicle. c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
* 6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation. a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TSOP. b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38. c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival. d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TSOP. e. Ensured the landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TSOP, if required.		
7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance. a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6. b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew. c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TSOP. e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.		
8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties. a. Assumed MOPP 4. b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TSOP. c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location. d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.		
9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to transport.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress-Reduction and Stress-Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) (FM 22-51)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat-health-support (CHS) operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The unit's sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) to manage battle-fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress-management procedures be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military-occupational-specialty (MOS-) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress-prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress-prevention leader actions. a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Briefed the leader's intention to all unit personnel. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Instituted an information-dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.		
* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan. a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TSOP.		
* 3. The leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation. * 4. The leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques. a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home-front problems. c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders. d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment. e. Conducted after-action debriefings. f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any especially traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51. g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies. * 5. The commander and leaders implement stress-control techniques. a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element. 6. Unit personnel employ stress-prevention measures. a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy-aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)
(FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
(AR 40-5) (FM 21-10-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist, which require field sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit's field sanitation team (FST). The combat-health-support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Field sanitation measures are accomplished according to the TSOP, the OPORD, and Field Manual (FM) 21-10. The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TSOP, FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures. a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter the medical threat. b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP. c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures. d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit's FST according to the TSOP and the OPORD. e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies. f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TSOP. h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.		
2. The FST supervises unit field sanitation measures. a. Maintained field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1. c. Tested the unit's water supply for required chlorine residual level according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. d. Inspected the water containers and trailers according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent) and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance. f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required. g. Monitored personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures. h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP, as required. i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and the TSOP. k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and the TSOP. m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP. o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP. 3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures. a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TSOP. b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP. c. Consumed only water designated as potable. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TSOP. e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed-net repellent. h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TSOP. j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)
(FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational.

NOTE: Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send reports and locations via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. These activities are curtailed in MOPP 4. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander designates a search-and-recovery team. a. Selected a team leader. b. Issued guidance.		
* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search. a. Performed a map or an aerial reconnaissance of the search area. b. Identified additional support requirements. c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ. d. Identified the search pattern to be used. e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ. f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.		
* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations. a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on the operational procedures. b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC-agent tags. c. Assigned the search area. d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TSOP and the commander's guidance. e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ. f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search. a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps. b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects. c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs. d. Collected all disassociated personal effects. e. Recorded the eight-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.		
5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains. a. Established tentative identification. b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains. c. Attached personal effects to the remains. d. Shrouded the remains with available materials. e. Prepared a recovery-site sketch of the recovery site. f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.		
6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains. a. Verified that the personal effects were attached to the remains. b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation feet first, in aircraft head first. c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.		
* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials. a. Identified the specific burial site. b. Supervised the marking of the grave site. c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.		
8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials. a. Prepared the grave site. b. Placed the remains in the grave. c. Marked all the grave sites. d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)
(FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Since the normal supply-support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational.

NOTE: An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supplies, equipment, and rigging gear are derigged and recovered. Digital unit send and receive reports, orders, and requests via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The company requests supplies and equipment by airdrop. a. Identified the required supplies and equipment. b. Identified the drop zone (DZ). c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request. d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		
* 2. The company commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan. a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer. b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4. c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat-control team (CCT), or the drop-zone support team (DZST), through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans. e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment. f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4. g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.		
3. The company receives supplies and equipment. a. Secured the DZ or AO. b. Derigged the supplies and equipment. c. Recorded shortages. d. Identified the damaged items.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Evacuated the supplies and equipment. f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-3895-203-15)
(TM 11-5805-262-12) (TM 11-5805-294-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The internal communications network is set up according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan. a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain. b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance. c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines. d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task. e. Prepared a telephone-traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system. f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone-system users.		
2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB). a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM. e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM. f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram. g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.		
3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones. a. Installed the distribution box.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain. e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line-route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction. 4. The section operates the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM. 5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20-percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5710.00-0001	Place a Telephone Set, TA-312/PT or TA-1/PT, into Operation	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-5711.02-0001	Install Hot Loop with Telephone TA-312/PT	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
03-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts and delays the enemy's defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy's security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts the enemy's obstacle preparations.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T). Digital units send reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches the EPWs. a. Removed the weapons and the documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military-intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property taken.		
2. The element segregates the EPWs. a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, nationality, and ideology, when possible. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.		
3. The element silences the EPWs. a. Prevented the EPWs leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented the EPWs from planning escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.		
4. The element safeguards the EPWs. a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely.		
5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)

(FM 24-1)	(FM 24-18)	(FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)	(FM 24-35)	(FM 24-35-1)
(FM 3-100)	(FM 3-11)	(FM 34-45)
(FM 7-7)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element is conducting combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2). Reports should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, in the appropriate field manual (FM), or in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit's SOP or the situation. The leaders-- a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE). b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.		
* 2. The leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ. The leaders-- NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, the damage, and the angle of the fall or the descent, as the time and the conditions permit. a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation. b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information. c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information: a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022. b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4. c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro optics - 5. d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency. e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications). f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates.		
* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The leaders submit information on the-- a. Line of departure (LD) crossing b. Checkpoint arrival times. c. Rally point (RP) arrival time. d. Logistics report. e. Intelligence report.		
* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2003. The report includes-- a. The designation of the patrol. b. The date. c. The unit receiving the report. d. The name of the person submitting the report. e. The size and composition of the patrol. f. The mission. g. The departure and return times. h. The routes out and back. i. A terrain description, to include the-- (1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky. (2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws. (3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges. (4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles. j. Data on the enemy, to include the-- (1) Strength. (2) Disposition. (3) Condition of the defense. (4) Equipment and weapons. (5) Morale of the personnel. (6) Exact location. (7) Shift in disposition. (8) Time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred. k. Any map corrections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) warfare. m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, to include the-- (1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition. (2) Identification of enemy personnel. (3) Enemy causalities. (4) Captured documents and equipment. n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded. o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics. p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader. q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the interrogator's signature. * 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report. The leaders-- a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks). * 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report. The leaders-- a. Submitted the NBC 4 report to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Platoon) (05-3-0002)
(FM 5-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-102) (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element is performing continuous tactical operations in darkness or daylight, under all weather conditions. The unit is either working directly for an engineer unit from which it has received an operation order (OPORD) or is supporting a maneuver force which has received a mission from its higher headquarters. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer estimate gives the element leader feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. Digital units can send and receive estimates and reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader performs a mission analysis. a. Identified the mission objectives, which included the-- (1) Intent of the immediate commander and the commander two levels above. (2) Area of operations. (3) Tasks to be performed, specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance or in the OPORD and implied by the nature of the operation, and deciding which were essential to the mission's success. (4) Constraints or acts requiring completion. (5) Restraints or prohibited acts. b. Restated the unit's mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.		
* 2. The platoon leader performs a situation analysis. a. Analyzed the supported operations, the nature of the operations, the composition of the supported forces, any unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and the scope of the mission. b. Determined the characteristics of the area of operations and the impact on the engineer options. (1) Analyzed the weather for the precipitation and temperature impacts on the-- (a) Trafficability for enemy and friendly combat vehicles. (b) Water obstacle depth, flow rate, and bank conditions. (c) Ability to dig positions and tank ditches. (d) Fog or the limited visibility impact on the positioning of the obstacles. (e) Engineer vehicle's capability to maneuver in limited visibility and reduced trafficability and to keep pace with the maneuver-unit's fighting vehicles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(f) Employment of conventional and scatterable mines in extreme weather conditions. (2) Analyzed the terrain for the-- (a) Observation or the fields of fire. Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy) and the items, buildings, and vegetation to be cleared to improve the observation. (b) Cover and concealment. Identified the concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river-crossing operations). Identified the possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance (c) Obstacles. Identified the existing natural and man-made obstacles and their impact on the maneuver, the avenues of approach, and the placement of the reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated these items with respect to friendly and enemy maneuvers and the type of unit. (d) Key or decisive terrain. Determined the potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control or to deny enemy control. (e) Avenues of approach. Identified the friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based upon the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach. (3) Analyzed other characteristics important to the engineer plan. c. Coordinated with the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2), developed the enemy situation, and provided input about the enemy's engineer capabilities. (1) Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to the enemy organic engineers from the enemy higher echelons. (2) Determined the location of enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capabilities, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely delivered mine capability. (3) Assessed the enemy's capabilities for breaching, gap crossings, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and remotely delivered mine emplacement (from aircraft or artillery). (4) Evaluated the recent and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify the weaknesses and the strengths. (5) Predicted the possible and likely COAs on the enemy and the impact of the enemy's engineer situation on their COA. d. Evaluates the platoon's current situation. (1) The tactical situation. Evaluated the present disposition of the major tactical elements, the possible COA, and the current and projected operations. (2) Personnel and logistics. Evaluated the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, the levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets. (3) The engineer situation. Evaluated the present disposition and capabilities of platoon elements and the estimated completion times of the current tasks. Evaluated the number of combat support units to assist with engineer tasks (especially scatterable mines).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. The platoon leader develops at least two separate COAs to accomplish the mission or develops an engineer plan as part of each COA under development by the maneuver force. a. Identified the requirements, the tasks, and the necessary resources to accomplish them, by location or by the supported unit. (1) Computed the blade hours using known data. If actual data was not available, used the planning factors outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-34, 5-102, or 5-103. (2) Computed the squad hours. (3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements. (4) Identified supply requirements by the class of supply and the specific items. b. Summarized resource requirements for each location or supported unit by the squad hours, equipment, and logistics. c. Determined the priorities for tasks based on the guidance from the higher commander. d. Allocated engineer forces to-- (1) Meet the guidance of the higher commander. (2) Accomplish all tasks. (3) Employ the assets efficiently, with no wasted squad or equipment time.		
* 4. The platoon leader analyzes each COA. a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each COA against anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against the significant factors impacting on it. b. Determined shortfalls by comparing the resource requirements with the available assets. NOTE: The significant factors should include the critical maneuver-force events. c. Reduced the shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan (as necessary). The requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of the available resources. NOTE: If the engineer plan does not meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, beginning with Subtask 3.		
* 5. The platoon leader compares each proposed COA and selects which one best accomplishes the mission. a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison. b. Used the significant factors identified in Subtask 4a. NOTE: The selection of the best COA is a subjective judgment, it is not based solely upon numerical techniques.		
* 6. The platoon leader makes a decision. a. Stated his decision clearly to his subordinates. b. Determined the company's task organization and allocated the resources. c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.		
* 7. The platoon leader makes a recommendation to the supported unit's maneuver commander. a. Stated which COA could be supported from the engineer perspective. b. Covered major deficiencies and included recommendations for eliminating or reducing them.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Recommended the engineer task organization, the command-and-support relationships (as necessary), the tasks directed to subordinate elements, and the priorities for engineer support.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Prepare an Engineer Annex (Platoon [PLT]) (05-3-0003)
(FM 101-5) (FM 5-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An engineer element is supporting a maneuver force in a tactical operation. The element leader is the task-force engineer and must prepare an engineer annex as part of the supported unit's operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The engineer annex contains the essential information needed to support the maneuver-commander's operation. The annex is clear, and the maneuver force understands its concept. Digital units send and receive messages and reports to subordinate and higher headquarters (HQ) via frequency modulated (FM) or digital systems.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader selects an annex format based on the amount and type of information needed, the time available to produce it, and the guidance from the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) of the maneuver unit. NOTES: 1. A written annex format uses the basic five-paragraph order format. 2. An overlay annex format includes all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, or gaps), all known and templated enemy obstacles, and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas. 3. An obstacle-list annex format contains all obstacles. 4. An engineer execution-matrix annex format includes all identified engineer tasks, all identified logistic and coordination requirements, and marginal notes to cover other needed information.		
* 2. The engineer platoon leader ensures that the annex contains the information from the estimate process. The annex-- a. Contained all information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the OPORD. b. Did not contain items covered in the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP), although it could make reference to the SOP. c. Was directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit, not just the engineers. d. Was clear, complete, brief, timely, and avoided qualified directives. e. Did not contain irrelevant information. f. Was issued with the OPORD. All details were fully integrated with the other parts of the OPORD. g. Contained the tasks directed to units other than the engineers. The tasks were coordinated before issuing the annex. All details were coordinated with the appropriate battle-staff element.		
* 3. The platoon leader, when using the written five-paragraph order format, ensures that the annex contains the following:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. SITUATION. (1) The enemy situation contains aspects significantly impacting on engineer operations, including the weather, the terrain, and the engineer capability. (2) The friendly forces situation identifies other engineer units in general support. It describes other elements that can assist with the engineer plan. (3) Attachments and detachments (only if needed for clarity). b. MISSION. Refers to Subtask 2 and the basic OPORD. c. EXECUTION. (1) A concept of operation contains: (a) A brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of the engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement is precise and specific. (b) As appropriate, the annex identifies the individual obstacles and obstacle zones, belts, or restricted areas; the types (reserved or preliminary); the authorized commander (for reserved obstacles); and the obstacle responsibilities of the subordinate unit. The annex should refer to an overlay or an obstacle table. (c) As appropriate, the annex explains the employment concept, the authority for a long or short self-destruct time (by system), other requirements or limitations, and the allocation to subordinate elements. The annex identifies nonengineer units responsible for emplacing scatterable mines. (2) Engineer related subunit missions, as necessary. The annex identifies tasks for the subordinate maneuver units, engineers under direct control of the issuing headquarters, and other elements assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander. (3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. The annex identifies the measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units. d. SERVICE SUPPORT. The service-support information contains logistical information affecting the engineer plan, specifically Class IV and Class V items, and transportation. It identifies the available host-nation assets and their locations and the priorities for command-regulated items. e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. (1) Command. The command contains the location of engineer command posts (CPs) and special command arrangements. (2) Signal. NOTE: Nonengineer units with scatterable-mine emplacement capabilities (artillery, Army aviation, and Air Force) are identified here. All forces covered by the maneuver-unit's OPORD have the same mission. There is no separate engineer mission for the engineer annex. A general statement such as "priority to mobility, countermobility, and survivability in order" is unsatisfactory.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS

TASK: Report Obstacle Information (Platoon) (05-3-0025)
(FM 5-101) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34.2)
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives obstacle and scatterable mine (SCATMINE) information from subordinate elements and the battalion. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on the obstacles in the area of operations (AO). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company command post (CP) receives obstacle information required by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). a. Received a status report that indicated the serial number, the type, the location (eight-digit and coordinate), the progress, and the completion date of the obstacles and the date and time that the report was generated. b. Received a SCATMINE record or a SCATMINE warning report. See Field Manual (FM) 20-32. c. Received a map sheet. d. Received information on the enemy's situation. e. Received information on the additional assets or equipment required. Notified the supply section and platoons of the type, the quantity, and the personnel. f. Received information on the execution of the obstacles (time, name, platoon, type, location, and serial number). g. Received information on the obstacle's handoff (time, name, platoon, type, location, and serial number).		
* 2. The company CP reports the obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command using the digital obstacle document (OBSDOC) report format on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.		
3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the obstacles (the type, the unit responsible for emplacement, the progress, the completion date, the hand off, and the execution); the enemy's situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on the SCATMINEs. See FM 20-32.		
4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the obstacles (the type, the serial number, the location, the emplacement progress, and the possible hand off); the relocation of material; the emplacement and execution of the SCATMINEs; and the unit or the location of the tasked elements, if assistance is required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on the command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, recovery vehicles, maintenance support, obstacle material, and communications equipment; the mission's location; a map sheet; and the platoons needing assistance. 6. The company CP personnel record the obstacle information from the platoons and the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO)-- a. Updated the company CP situation map with team locations; the emplaced, executed, and handed-off obstacles; the intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and the handed-off obstacle locations. b. Maintained an accurate status of the emplaced, executed, handed-off, and encountered obstacles and the intended and executed SCATMINE targets. c. Maintained files of sent reports. d. Coordinated with the battalion's S3 to update him on the status of the obstacles emplaced by the company, the obstacle execution and enhancement, the SCATMINEs, and any required assistance. 7. The company commander briefs the supported commander and/or the higher engineer on the SCATMINEs, reserve targets, and other obstacles, including their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and handoff.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Integrate Engineer Elements into the Maneuver Company (05-3-0300)
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-71-100) (FM 5-71-2)
(FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The task force (TF) is in continuous operations under daylight or darkness. Engineer elements have been received from higher headquarters (HQ) to support TF operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Engineer elements must be integrated into the TF scheme of maneuver according to the commander's intent and must synchronize the engineer effort in conjunction with other battlefield operating systems (BOS). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The TF engineer advises the TF commander on the use and employment of engineer assets. a. Performed mission analysis and recommended the task organization. b. Recommended the command and support relationship. c. Sent the warning order (WO) to subordinate units. d. Participated in the staff orders process, ensuring that the engineers were integrated into the process for fire support (FS), reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S), and the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). e. Briefed subordinate leaders on the scheme of maneuver and the commander's intent. f. Monitored engineer activities and made recommendations, as necessary.		
* 2. The leaders prepare the units for movement and linkup operations. a. Directed precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). b. Reviewed drills and orders. c. Participated in the combined-arms reconnaissance. d. Conducted linkup operations and received the operation order (OPORD) briefing. e. Participated in the combined-arms rehearsals.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-1018.05-R01A)
(FM 5-10) (FM 101-5) (FM 5-71-2)
(FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives a mission from a warning order (WO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD). Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit leader gives a WO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. Digital units have the ability to conduct map reconnaissance using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS). The Army Battle Command System (ABCS) can be used to submit reports and orders to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WO, a FRAGO or an OPORD from its higher headquarters. The element leader determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.		
* 2. The element leader issues a WO to the subordinate leaders. The element leader-- a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation). b. Identified the task organization. c. Stated the time of the operation. d. Gave any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Stated the element time line.		
* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission. The element leader-- a. Developed the plan based on the METT-TC. b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process. c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation. d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured equipment based on the mission. Subordinate leaders checked rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual soldier's knowledge of the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The element continues assembly-area activities and security. a. Maintained equipment and weapons. b. Conducted personal hygiene. c. Resupplied the equipment and materials, to include small-arms ammunition, demolitions, mines, and the refueling of the vehicles. d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills. e. Conducted weapon test firing (if possible). f. Ate and rested. g. Maintained security. 5. The element begins movement. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan. The subordinate leader moves the element in the absence of the element leader. NOTE: This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step. * 6. The element leader conducts a reconnaissance. The element leader-- a. Conducted a map reconnaissance as a minimum. (When practical, the subordinate leaders participated in the reconnaissance.) b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force). (1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical. (2) Identified the critical areas to the mission. (3) Moved as far forward as the time and the situation permitted. * 7. The element leader completes the plan. The element leader-- a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance. b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the available equipment, personnel, and material. c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets. * 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or an OPORD format, to the subordinate leaders and to the attached leaders. The order contains the following information: NOTE: The order may be given to the entire element at the same time. a. SITUATION. (1) Enemy forces. (2) Friendly forces. (3) Attachments and detachments. b. MISSION. c. EXECUTION. (1) Concept of the operation. (a) Scheme of maneuver. (b) Fires. (c) Reconnaissance and surveillance. (d) Intelligence. (e) Engineer support. (f) Air defense. (g) Information operations. (2) Subunit tasks. (3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum the element leader must address the-- (a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective. (b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(c) Risk-reduction control measures. NOTE: The element leader determined the risk-reduction control measures by using the 5 steps of the risk-management process. For additional information, the element leader referred to Field Manual (FM) 101-5. (d) Rules of engagement. (e) Environmental considerations. (f) Force protection. d. SERVICE SUPPORT. (1) Support concept. (2) Materials and services. (3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (4) Personnel. (5) Civil Military. e. COMMAND and SIGNAL. (1) Command. (a) The location of the element leadership, support-element leadership, and the command posts for the operation. (b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element's standing operating procedure [SOP] or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]). (2) Signal. (a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect. (b) Radio communication restrictions. (c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals. (d) Code words and reports specific to the operation. (e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures. * 9. The subordinate leaders complete the PCCs. The element leaders conduct the PCIs. NOTE: Subordinate leaders can conduct the PCCs on receipt of a WO or a FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC/PCI checklists in the element TACSOP. a. Checked/inventoried equipment and ensured that the items were serviceable and that the elements had everything specified in the element SOP and the items required for the specific mission. b. Ensured that the element had adequate resupply ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines. c. Conducted a communications check. d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that the weapons were test fired. e. Questioned personnel to ensure that they understood their task and purpose and that of the element's headquarters. f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission. *10. The leaders of the element conduct at least one type of rehearsal according to FM 101-5.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP ARTEP 5-445-64-MTP ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP ARTEP 5-463-10-MTP
07-3-4129.05-T01A	Defend a Battle Position	ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
		ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP
		ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP
		ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP
		ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP
		ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP
		ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP
		ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP
		ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP
		ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP
		ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
07-3-4129.05-T01D	DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION	ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) have assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy's rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

STANDARD: Kill or wound targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

TASK: Conduct Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

CONDITION: The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy's route.

STANDARD: Inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to the vehicles and the equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

CONDITION: The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

STANDARD: The OPFOR disrupts the enemy's movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke, and surge attack when the enemy responds to the smoke.

TASK: Conduct Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) requires intelligence on the locations and identification of the enemy elements. Aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

STANDARD: The OPFOR gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

TASK: Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

CONDITION: The opposing forces (OPFOR) small elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

STANDARD: The OPFOR infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. a. Secured radios in mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks.		
2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets. a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI and/or the SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).		
3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.		
4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for max signal. d. Relocated the antenna.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Requested a change of frequency. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports. 5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security (TSEC)/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI and/or the SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI and/or the SSI (not necessary in secure-voice operation). e. Kept the length (not more than 20 seconds per transmission) and the number of transmissions to a minimum. f. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Adhered to net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
01-5700.01-0002	Determine Call Signs, Frequencies, and Item Numbers	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS
01-5700.01-0003	Employ a Numeral Cipher Authentication System	STP 21-II-MQS STP 21-I-MQS

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION
COMBAT MEDIC SECTION

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)
(FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been briefed and has extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the standing signal instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio-net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area prior to going to the field location. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINCGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability. a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly. WARNING: High voltages exist at connector J1 on the mounting adapter. Be sure J1 is covered or capped when not in use. b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack only). c. Ensured that the preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.		
* 2. The supervisor selects the site. a. Selected the primary and the alternate locations within the general site. b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline. c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment. d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.		
3. Net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed before-operation PMCS. b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed preoperational PMCS. b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13. e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI and/or the SSI. f. Loaded the cue frequency. g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency as required. h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI and/or the SSI.		
5. The NCS opens the net. a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel. b. Issued the electronic counter-countermeasures [ECCM] remote fill (ERF) instructions and sent the ERF. c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call. d. Opened the net. e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called missing net members. f. Repeated the cold start. g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.		
6. Net members enter the net. a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call. b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel. e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.		
7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method. a. Performed pre-mission checks for a FH cold-start. b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI and/or the SSI. c. Initiated the cue call. d. Reported into the net. e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.		
8. Net members use proper radio procedures. a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum. b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate. c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies. d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. e. Operated on a random schedule. f. Adhered to net discipline.		
9. Team members recognize different types of interference. a. Checked the receiver/transmitter's (RT) signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external. b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.		
10. Team members initiate ECCM actions. a. Continued to operate.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear. c. Reduced the transmission speed. d. Increased the transmitter power. e. Relocated the antenna. f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF). 11. Team members extend the range of the radio station. a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability. b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method. c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service. 12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site. a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas. b. Performed preoperational PMCS. c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D. e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. Cued the LNE using radio D. h. Stored the ERF into both radios. i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID. j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to retransmit (RXMT). 13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call. a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the NCI cue channel as required. b. Switched to NRI MAN channel. c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel. d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number. 14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net. a. Performed PMCS, as required. b. Performed fault isolation, as required. c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required. d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required. e. Completed all of the necessary entries in the maintenance record. f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor. 15. The NCS closes the net. a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. c. Acknowledged the net members. d. Performed after-operation PMCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Participate in the Operations Order (OPORD) Process (12-1-0408.05-T01A)
(FM 101-5) (FM 100-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is engaging in combat operations and has received a mission from higher headquarters (HQ). The battalion commander has issued planning guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel estimate and annex of the OPORD are completed in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section prepares the personnel estimate. a. Obtained the commander's restated mission. b. Obtained intelligence information from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Obtained tactical information from the commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Obtained logistical information from the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). e. Prepared the troop-preparedness situation. f. Analyzed and compared courses of action. g. Developed conclusions. h. Presented conclusions to the commander.		
2. The S1 section participates in the preparation process for the service-support annex. a. Verified the battalion's task organization. b. Updated task-force battle rosters and personnel strength (PS) charts to reflect the new task organization. c. Advised the commander and staff on task-force PS. d. Developed estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates. e. Coordinated the location of medical-support facilities and evacuation routes and procedures. f. Provided medical-support information to staff members in support of staff planning. g. Relayed tactical/operational information and command directives to medical-support units. h. Verified casualty data and strength information with the battalion aid station. i. Established requirements and procedures for strength accounting, replacements, and casualty reporting. j. Coordinated and designated temporary enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian-detainee collection points and outlined evacuation procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Prepared the personnel portion of paragraph 4 (Service Support) of the OPORD. l. Briefed task organization and personnel portions of the OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS
REGIMENTAL ENGINEER SECTION

TASK: Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)
(FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)
(AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 22-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field or military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed. a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Told the soldiers of the leaders' intentions. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Quelled and prevented rumors. g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.		
* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit's sleep plan. a. Developed the unit's sleep plan. b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep. c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible. d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest. e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.		
* 3. All leaders implement task-rotation restructuring procedures. a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).		
* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress-management techniques. a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques prior to deployment. b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders. c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed. d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit. e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.		
* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress-treatment techniques. a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle-fatigue cases. b. Assigned soldiers who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue to the performance of simpler tasks. c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers (who did not show improvement after resting) to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities. e. Referred for medical evaluation or care, those soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue or were not recuperating.		
* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support. a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed. b. Provided hot rations. c. Coordinated postal support. d. Coordinated combat payments. e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support. f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items. g. Coordinated legal support. h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit's MWR status.		
* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness. a. Monitored soldiers' fitness. b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed). c. Implemented personal hygiene and field-sanitation procedures. d. Corrected problem areas. e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.		
* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ). a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Forwarded charges for trial by courts-martial.		
* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings. a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness. b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: THREE ENGINEER PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
NINE ENGINEER SQUADS
ASSAULT AND OBSTACLE PLATOON HEADQUARTERS
THREE ASSAULT/OBSTACLE SECTIONS

TASK: Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-0001.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. A lull in the battle has occurred. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: A personnel status report (PSR), which accounts for all platoon personnel, is provided daily or as required. Digital units send requests, reports, and orders via frequency modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Squad members take immediate action. a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers. b. Requested medical aid, as needed.		
* 2. Squad leaders report the personnel status of the squad. a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel. b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 for killed or wounded soldiers (body under United States [US] control). c. Prepared DA Form 1155 for captured or missing soldiers (body not under US control). d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP).		
* 3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes strength information. a. Recorded the situation report (SITREP) and other personnel information. b. Directed cross leveling to fill critical-position openings caused by casualties. c. Consolidated squad personnel reports. d. Collected casualty feeder reports and witness statements (DA Forms 1155 and 1156). e. Updated the battle roster and the platoon's strength-accountability system. f. Determined critical-replacement requirements. g. Prepared the strength report.		
* 4. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant processes replacements. a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or platoon orientation. b. Entered the names of soldiers onto the platoon's accountability system or battle roster. c. Inspected soldiers for combat-critical clothing and equipment. d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat-critical clothing and equipment. e. Implemented the buddy system. f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant reports the personnel status. a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156. b. Transmitted the strength report and other requested personnel information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation evaluates the unit's ability to perform its mission. Using units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs in Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the use of the MILES are used for evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the strengths and weaknesses of his unit. These strengths and weakness are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation:

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations		Prestart
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 2 hours	0200 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	5 hours	0400 hours
5	Occupy an Assembly Area	3 hours	0900 hours
Module 1			
6	Receive a Warning Order	2 hours	1200 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
Module 2			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 -	1400 hours
13	Receive a Warning Order		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	End Exercise (ENDEX)		

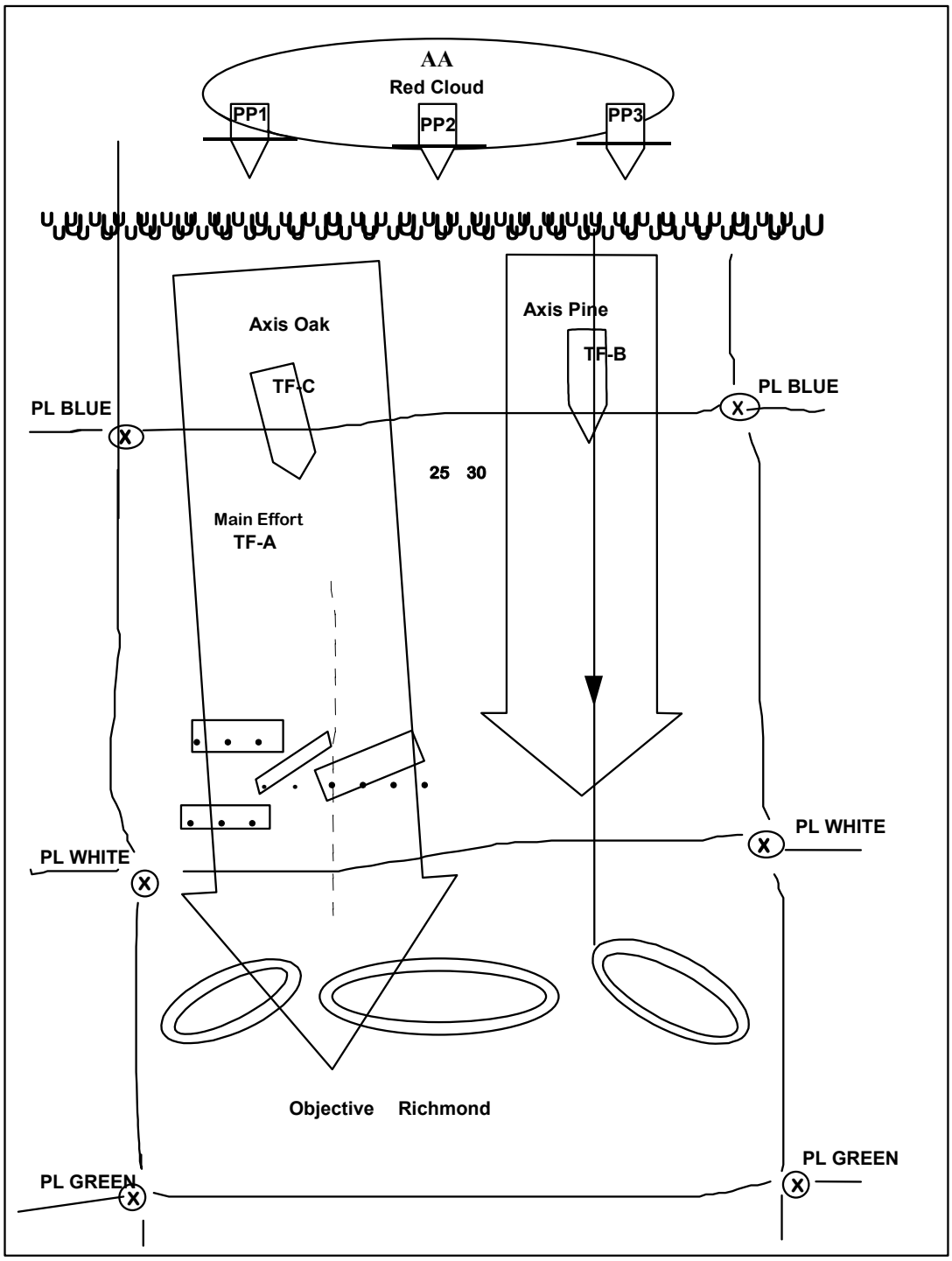


Figure 6-1. General Scenario Illustration

a. Identify the missions to be evaluated for each echelon using Figure 2-2 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: _____ Date: _____

No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section Squad	Section Squad	Section Squad	Section Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO- NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	G0 NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO- NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

b. List each mission on a separate task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).

Task Summary Sheet **Mission:**			
Task Titles	**T&EO Number**	**Evaluation** **GO**	**NO-GO**
Observer/controller's signature: **NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. The observer/controller's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.**			

Figure 6-3. Sample Task Summary Sheet

c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations (Table 6-1). The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own list of consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated List of Support Requirements

Consolidated Support Requirements for STX 5-2-E0001			
Ammunition	**DODIC**	**Estimated Basic Load**	
5.56 millimeters (mm)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per squad automatic weapon (SAW)	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
Antitank Weapon-Effect Simulator System (ATWEES) (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (see note)			
Mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC)		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block trinitrotoluene (TNT)		50 per squad	
Modernized demolition initiator (MDI) M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 each platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
CLASS IV			
Concertina wire			
Mines			
MILES Equipment	**Company**	**Evaluators**	**OPFOR**
Armored personnel carrier (APC)	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small-arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the STX.			

6-4. Selecting and Training Os/Cs. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting Os/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the conduct of the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

(1) Senior O/C.

(2) Staff O/C.

(3) Operations O/C.

(4) Administration O/C.

(5) Logistics O/C.

(6) NBC O/C.

b. A thorough knowledge of the unit's mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine is required by the Os/Cs. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports the force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local defense common task areas. The Os/Cs should be equal in grade to the person in charge of the element they are evaluating and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as team members, and state their findings in writing and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing Os/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. The O/C training includes the--

(1) Overall evaluation design, general scenario, master-events list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives.

(2) Unit's METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this ARTEP MTP.

(3) O/C team composition and the general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) Detailed responsibilities of individual team members with special emphasis on the master-events-list items that are their responsibility. These include--

(a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the Os/Cs folders.

(b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

(c) The O/C communications and C^2 system.

(d) Safety procedures.

(e) An evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.

(f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items of the master-events list in order of their occurrence and a review of each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership and focuses his efforts on ensuring that the Os/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolving problems, synchronizing the efforts of the team members, ensuring close coordination among team members, holding periodic team coordination meetings, planning and orchestrating the unit's AAR, and conducting specific evaluation-team AARs.

6-5 Selecting and Training OPFOR. The OPFOR support for a unit's external evaluation is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit's capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes--

(1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.

(2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.

(3) OPFOR tasks and standards.

(4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.

(5) C^2.

(6) Safety.

6.6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. Os/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ staff two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. They issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C has the overall responsibility for the implementation of the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is made up by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. This evaluation has four steps:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit’s performances of the tasks. This is done for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit’s overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO -- the unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO -- the unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally produced reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit’s capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C in determining the unit’s overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This records personnel and equipment status information.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This records information concerning the weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This records information concerning unit personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET

1. Unit designation: Date:

2. Unit leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)

Position	Rank	Time in unit (months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S3	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
BN maintenance officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19

3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):

4. Equipment shortages (major items):

5. Comments:

Observer/controller's signature:

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET

Exercise number and description:

Date and time the exercise started:

Date and time the exercise ended:

1. Weather conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)

Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Rain Snow Fog

Other:

Temperature:

2. Ground conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)

Dry Wet Ice Snow

Other:

3. Light conditions: (Circle the appropriate description)

Day Night

Moon phase: 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full

Average range of visibility due to terrain:

4. Remarks:

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	Date and Time of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
Comments:					

Figure 6-6. Sample Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

6-8. After Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit HQ members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-actions phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are--

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is initiated in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified Os/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation commences with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the HQ engineer unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable Os/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical break points in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR's purpose, the establishment of ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. Guidelines for a successful AAR include the following:

(a) AARs are not critiques but professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner that ensures that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among Os/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum the review should address hazards that presented themselves that were not identified and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events that were not directly related to the major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TCs) 25-6 and 25-20, and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)

A-1. General.

a. The CATS was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, the CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special-operations forces of both AC and RC soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

A-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.

a. Maneuver Strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources required to support these events. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a maneuver training strategy. The Web site for this information is http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac.

b. Gunnery Strategy. The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and depict resources required to support weapon training. Schools identified in DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems have developed gunnery strategies. See DA Pam 350-38 for examples of the various weapon strategies.

c. Soldier Strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a soldier training strategy.

APPENDIX B - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER (OPORD)

For use of the OPORD refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure B-1.

OPERATION ORDER

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. He is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. Latest intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) indicate that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of phase line (PL) Green. This operation includes--

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery (FA), is in direct support.

2. MISSION. The task force (TF) conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.

(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs assembly area (AA) Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the enemy's main body so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy the enemy's combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If that fails, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.

(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical choke points and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer Support. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

Figure B-1. Sample OPORD

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Report additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current signal operating instructions (SOI).

(2) Maintain radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

Figure B-1. Sample OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS

C-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia still has the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possess formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North American Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

C-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into our rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into our rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C^2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

C-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

C-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even a global power. In the past, for example, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

C-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage-taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Aside from these threats, terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons to reach their goals.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

C-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table D-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

Section I
Abbreviations

BOMREP	bombing report
CONEX	container express
?	status unknown
1LT	first lieutenant
1SG	first sergeant
5 Ss and T	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
A&O	assault and obstacle
AA	avenue of approach; assembly area
AAR	after-action review
ABCS	Army Battle Command System
AC	active component
ACE	air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmovers
ACR	armored cavalry regiment
ADA	air defense artillery
ADAM	area-denial artillery munition
ADC	area damage control
AFM	Air Force manual
AHD	antihandling device
AO	area of operations
AP	antipersonnel
APC	armored personnel carrier
APOBS	Antipersonnel Obstacle-Breaching System
AR	Army regulation; armor
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
AT	antiterrorism; antitank

ATTN	attention
ATWESS	antitank weapon-effect signature simulator
AVLB	armored vehicle-launched bridge
BF	board feet; battle fatigue
BLTM	battalion-level training model
BN	battalion
BOM	bill of materials
BOS	Battlefield Operating Systems
C2	command and control
C4	composition 4 explosive
CALFEX	combined-arms live-fire exercise
CAS	casualty; close air support
CATS	Combined-Arms Training Strategy
CBT	combat
CCIR	commander's critical-information requirement
CCT	combat-control team
CDM	chemical downwind message
CEV	combat engineer vehicle
CFX	command field exercise
CHS	combat health support
CO	commissioned officer; carbon monoxide; commanding officer; company
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMSEC	communications security
COP	common operational picture
CP	command post; check point
CPT	captain
CPX	command-post exercise

CS	combat support; Costa Rica
CSS	combat service support
DA	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
DD	Department of Defense
demo	demolition
DEUCE	deployable universal combat earthmover
DIV	Division
DRS	direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
DS	direct support
DS2	decontamination solution #2
DTG	date-time group
DTSS	Digital Topographic Support System
DZ	drop zone
DZST	drop-zone support team
EA	each; engagement area
EBA	engineer battlefield assessment
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
EGA	extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form
EM	engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member
EMO	electronic media only
EN	engineer (unit designations; graphics)
ENDEX	end exercise
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERF	electronic remote fill; electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) remote fill
EW	electronic warfare

FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
FH	field hospital; frequency hopping
FIST	fire-support team
FM	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
FO	forward observer
FPF	final protective fire; final protection fires
FPL	final protective line
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FS	fire support; Fort Sill; foresight
FSO	fire support officer; food service officer
FSOP	field standard operating procedure
FST	field sanitation team; fire support team
FTX	field training exercise
GEMSS	Ground-Emplaced Mine-Scattering System
GRREG	graves registration
GSR	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
HE	high explosive
HEAT	high-explosive antitank
HEMMS	hand-emplaced minefield marking set
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HMEE	high-mobility engineer escalator
HQ	headquarters
HVY	heavy
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IOE	irregular outer edge
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IR	infrared; intelligence requirements
ITR	independent tank regiment

KIA	killed in action
LC	line of crossing; light case
LCE	load-carrying equipment
LD	line of departure
LID	light infantry division
LNE	late net entry
LOGPAC	logistics package; logistical package
LRA	local reproduction authorized
LT	Light; lieutenant
LTC	lieutenant colonel
LZ	landing zone
MAJ	major
MAPEX	map exercise
MBT	main battle tank
MCR	mine-clearing roller
MCS	Maneuver Control System
MDI	modernized demolition initiator
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
MHE	materials-handling equipment
MICLIC	mine-clearing line charge
MIJI	meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
MLC	military load classification; military load class
MM	millimeter
MOPMS	Modular-Pack Mine System
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MORTREP	mortar bombing report

MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MQS	military qualification standards
MSR	main supply route
MSRT	Mobile Subscriber Radiotelephone Terminal
MTF	medical treatment facility
MTP	mission training plan; MOS training plan
MWR	morale, welfare, and recreation
NAI	named area of interest
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
NG	National Guard
non-ICOM	nonintegrated communications security
NRI	net radio interface
NSN	national stock number; nonstandard number
NVD	night vision device
O/C	observer/controller
OBSDOC	obstacle document
OBSTINTEL	obstacle intelligence
OCOKA	observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenue of approach
OEG	operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance
OIC	officer in charge
OP	observation post

OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operational tempo
OR	operational readiness
P	pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature
PAM	pamphlet
PCC	precombat check
PCI	photo-coverage indexes; precombat inspection
PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PDF	principal direction of fire
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PL	phase line; Poland
PLT	platoon
PMCS	preventive-maintenance checks and services
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POS/NAV	position/navigation
PS	personnel strength; personnel status
PSG	platoon sergeant
PSR	personnel status report
PVNTMED	preventive medicine
R&S	Reconnaissance and Security; reconnaissance and surveillance
RATELO	radiotelephone operator
RC	reserve component
RES	radiation exposure status
ROKUS	Republic of Korea, United States
RP	Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point

RT	radius of target; receiver/transmitter
RTD	return to duty
RXMT	retransmit
S1	Adjutant (US Army)
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)
SA	semiannually; situational awareness
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment
SATRAN	satellite transmission
SATS	Standard Army Training System
SAW	squad automatic weapon
SB	Supply Bulletin; switchboard
SCATMINE	scatterable mine
SCPE	simplified collective-protection equipment
SEE	small emplacement excavator
SHELREP	shelling report
SHTU	simplified handheld terminal unit
SIG	signal
SINCGARS	single-channel ground and airborne radio system
SITREP	situation report
SOI	signal operation instructions; specific operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain
SPOTREP	spot report
SSI	standing signal instructions; supplemental signal instructions
SSN	social security number
STANAG	Standardization Agreement

STB	super tropical bleach
STP	soldier's training publication
STRAC	Standards in Training Commission
STX	situational-training exercise
T	trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TACSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TC	technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander
TEK	traffic encryption key
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TF	task force
TM	technical manual
TNT	trinitrotoluene
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point
TRTS	tactical records traffic system
TSEC	transmission security
TSK	transmission security key
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
U	unclassified; up; untrained
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UPW	unit proficiency worksheet
US	United States
USA	United States of America; United States Army
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe

USMTF	United States message text format
UXO	unexploded ordnance
WAM	wide-area munition; wide area mine
WCS	weapon control status; weapon control station
WESTCOM	United States Army, Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
WO	warrant officer; warning order
XO	executive officer

Section II
Terms

ARTEP (Army Training and Evaluation Program)
The program for collective training in units. It describes the collective tasks that the unit must perform to accomplish its critical wartime mission and survive on the battlefield. The ARTEP combines the training and evaluation process into one integrated function. The ARTEP is a training program and a test. The primary purpose of external evaluation under this program is to diagnose unit requirements for future training.

Bangalore torpedo
A metal tube containing explosives and a firing mechanism. It is used to breach barbed wire obstacles and detonate land mines.

Berm
A uniform soil embankment.

Class II
Clothing, individual equipment, tentage, organizational tool sets and kits, hand tools, maps, and administrative and housekeeping supplies and equipment.

Class IV
Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

Class IX
Repair parts and components, to include kits, assemblies, and subassemblies (repairable or nonrepairable) required for maintenance support of all equipment.

Class V
Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

Class VII
Major end items such as launchers, tanks, mobile machine shops, and vehicles.

Claymore
M18A1 antipersonnel mine

Cue
(1) A word, situation, or other signal for action. An initiating cue is a signal to begin performing a task or task performance step. An internal cue is a signal to go from one element of a task to another. A terminating cue indicates task completion. (2) Used to contact an FH radio net when you are not an active member of that net. Cue can be used if you are operating in SC and wish to contact an FH net.

Defilade
A fighting position offering cover and concealment to its occupant.

Field Manual (FM)
A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute the missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

Final protective fire (FPF)
An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

Ford
A shallow part in a body of water where the bottom permits the passage of personnel or vehicles.

FRAGO (fragmentary order)
An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

MICLIC (mine-clearing line charge) M58 Series
A rocket propelled line charge, 106.5 meters (117 yards) long that can breach a lane 8 meters (8.8 yards) wide by 100 meters (110 yards) long. The MICLIC is mounted on a standard military (M353 or M200) trailer and has a 62-meter standoff capability. Engineer units will employ the MICLIC in response to minefield breaching requirements identified by the maneuver unit.

Military occupational specialty (MOS)
A term used to identify a group of duty positions so closely related that they are interchangeable among soldiers so classified at any skill level.

Military qualification standards
The system for establishing the standards and responsibilities for the professional development, training, and education of Army officers at appropriate levels/grades in order to execute our warfighting doctrine.

MOPMS (modular pack mine system)
Scatterable mine system with antitank or antipersonnel mines. A mix minefield is obtained by overlapping patterns of each type.

NBC 1 Report
Observer's Initial Report. Used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

NBC 4 Report
Monitoring and Survey Report used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

NBC 5 Report

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area is prepared by the division. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

Operating tempo (OPTEMPO)
The annual operating miles/hours for systems in a particular unit required to execute the commander's training strategy. It is stated in terms of the miles/hours for the major system in a unit; however, all equipment generating significant operating and support cost has an established operating tempo.

OPORD (operation order)
A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

Parapet
A wall, rampart, or elevation of earth or stone to protect soldiers.

Release point
A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

Sabot
A lightweight carrier in which a subcaliber projectile is centered to permit firing the projectile in a larger caliber weapon. The carrier fills the bore of the weapon from which the projectile is fired; it is normally discarded a short distance from the muzzle.

Situation report (SITREP)
A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

SOP (standing operating procedure)
A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

Threat Level I
1. Enemy agent activity. Missions include espionage, interdiction, and subversion. 2. Sabotage by enemy sympathizers. Missions include arson, assassination, sabotage, theft of supplies and material, and political unrest. 3. Terrorism. Actions that instill fear by violence or threats of violence to obtain political, religious, or ideological goals.

Threat Level II
1. Diversionary and sabotage operations conducted by combat units. 2. Raid, ambush, and reconnaissance operations conducted by combat units. 3. Special or unconventional warfare missions.

Threat Level III
1. Heliborne operations. 2. Airborne operations. 3. Amphibious operations. 4. Ground force deliberate operations. 5. Infiltration operations.

Turret defilade
A fighting position, usually for a tank, which allows the entire tank cover and concealment.

UH-1B
Utility Helicopter - 1 B (identifies modification version) (Huey)

UH-60
Utility Helicopter - 60 (Blackhawk)

VOLCANO
A multiple-delivery mine system dispensed from the air or on the ground.

Wadi
gully, ravine

WLGH
weapon-launched grappling hook

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 18 October 2000
ARTEP 5-053-11-MTP	Assault and Obstacle Platoon, Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment. 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Light Armored Cavalry Regiment. 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-063-10-MTP	Mobility Platoon, Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-063-11-MTP	Mobility Support Platoon, Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-063-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Brigade Combat Team. 10 January 2001
ARTEP 5-113-11-MTP	Assault and Obstacle Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-113-12-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-113-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Armored Cavalry Regiment 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-155-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-156-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-157-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Infantry Division (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-215-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division 20 June 2001

ARTEP 5-216-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-217-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Air Assault Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-335-60-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division/Corps. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP	Engineer Company; Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division/Corps (Mech); Engineer Company, Heavy Separate Brigade/ACR 1 December 1999
ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-335-70-MTP	Engineer Platoon; Heavy Division/Corps/Armored Cavalry Regiment. 1 December 1999
ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Heavy Division. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-413-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Construction Support. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-415-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Combat Heavy) Battalion Staff. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-416-34-MTP	Headquarters and Support Company, Engineer Battalion (CBT HVY). 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-13-MTP	Engineer Equipment Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-14-MTP	Engineer Maintenance Platoons. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-17-MTP	Mission Training Plan for Engineer Construction Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-417-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Combat Heavy). 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-423-11-MTP	Engineer Dump Truck Platoon. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Combat Support Equipment. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-424-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Dump Truck. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-425-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-426-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-427-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Wheeled) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-434-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Pipeline Construction. 1 March 2000
ARTEP 5-435-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (X) (APC Version). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-435-67-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps (M) (APC/CEV/AVLB Version). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-436-35-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-436-37-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-11-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-437-36-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (X). 25 June 1999

ARTEP 5-437-38-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Corps (M). 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-443-35-MTP	Engineer Light Equipment Company. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-445-66-MTP	Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-446-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-446-36-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-11-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, Airborne (Corps). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP	Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Corps) (Light) 20 June 2001
ARTEP 5-500-21-MTP	Engineer Teams. 21 September 1998
ARTEP 5-500-22-MTP	Firefighter. 19 September 1997
ARTEP 5-500-24-MTP	Engineer Diving Teams. 3 October 1995
ARTEP 5-510-10-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, HQ. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-12-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Fire Truck. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-16-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Brush Fire Truck. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-510-18-MTP	Engineer Fire-Fighting Team, Crash Rescue. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-520-10-MTP	Engineer Team, Quarry (75TPH) (LC). To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-10-MTP	Topographic Planning/Control Team. 20 April 1999
ARTEP 5-540-11-MTP	Terrain Analysis Team. To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-12-MTP	Command and Control Team (DS) (HVY). To be published within six months.
ARTEP 5-540-13-MTP	Terrain Analysis Team (LID). To be published within six months.

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record. 1 March 1987
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record (LRA). 1 October 1997
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985
DA FORM 2203-R	Demolition Reconnaissance Record (LRA). 1 June 1998

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 350-38	Standards in Weapon Training. 3 July 1997

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996

Field Manuals

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A). 30 September 1997
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations 16 February 1999
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 17-95	Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996
FM 19-30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-60	Visual Signals. 30 September 1987
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders` Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 22-9	Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations. 12 December 1991
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Air-Land Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996
FM 3-11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 19 August 1996
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. To be published within six months.
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-34.230	Topographic Operations. 3 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997

FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-101	Mobility. 23 January 1985
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000
FM 5-446	Military Nonstandard Fixed Bridging. 3 June 1991.
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 57-38	Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-7J	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 7 May 1993
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 90-10-1	An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas. 12 May 1993.
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

Other Product Types

STANAG 2003	Patrol Reports. 16 January 1989
STANAG 2036 (ENGR)	Land Minefield Laying, Marking, Recording, and Reporting Procedures. 12 February 1987.
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 19-95B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997
STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995
STP 5-12B1-SM	Soldier's Manual: MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1. 15 May 2001

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 12B, Combat Engineer. 12 December 1990

Technical Manuals

TM 11-3895-203-15	Operator's Organizational, Direct Support, General Support and Depot Maintenance Manual for Reel Equipment, CE-11 (NSN 5805-00-407-7722). 11 April 1967
TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983
TM 750-244-2	Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972
TM 750-244-3	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969
TM 750-244-6	Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972
TM 750-244-7	Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970
TM 9-1300-214	Military Explosives. 20 September 1984
TM 9-1375-213-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual (Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List): Demolition Materials. 30 March 1973

Training Circulars

TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988
TC 25-20	A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993
TC 25-6	Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995
TC 25-8	Training Ranges. 25 February 1992

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____DATE_____

MTP TITLE_____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

_____

2. How long have you served in this position?_____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

   a. Active Component
   b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

   a. Continental United States (CONUS)
   b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
   c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
   d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
   e. Other (specify)

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

   a. Has made training worse.
   b. Has made training better.
   c. Has had no affect on training.
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

   a. More difficult.
   b. Easier.
   c. About the same.
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?
_____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand?_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES (STXs).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP?_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

a. Have too many pages.
b. Are hard to read and understand.
c. Need more illustrations.
d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
e. Need more information on leader training.
f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
g. Need more information on support and resources.
h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

    a. Have too many pages.
    b. Are hard to read and understand.
    c. Need more illustrations.
    d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
    e. Need more information on leader training.
    f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
    g. Need more information on support and resources.
    h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
    i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
    j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    a. Leave it out altogether.
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.
    d. Make standards less detailed.
    e. Make standards more detailed.
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.
    g. Do not change, chapter is fine.
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

    a. Leave it out altogether.
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.
    d. Make standards less detailed.
    e. Make standards more detailed.
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.
    g. Do not change, chapter is fine.
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

19. Additional comments:

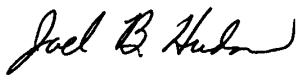
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

ARTEP 5-053-12-MTP
20 JUNE 2001

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0123308

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic Means Only.

PIN: 079233-000